

$\langle \psi \rangle$

Living Standard — Last Updated 27 October 2020

Participate:

<u>GitHub whatwg/dom</u> (<u>new issue</u>, <u>open issues</u>) <u>IRC: #whatwg on Freenode</u>

Commits:

GitHub whatwg/dom/commits Snapshot as of this commit @thedomstandard

Tests:

web-platform-tests dom/ (ongoing work)

Translations (non-normative):

日本語

Abstract

DOM defines a platform-neutral model for events, aborting activities, and node trees.

Table of Contents

```
Goals
1 Infrastructure
  1.1 Trees
   1.2 Ordered sets
   1.3 Selectors
   1.4 Namespaces
2 Events
   2.1 Introduction to "DOM Events"
   2.2 Interface Event
   2.3 Legacy extensions to the Window interface
   2.4 Interface CustomEvent
   2.5 Constructing events
   2.6 Defining event interfaces
   2.7 Interface EventTarget
   2.8 Observing event listeners
   2.9 Dispatching events
   2.10 Firing events
   2.11 Action versus occurrence
3 Aborting ongoing activities
   3.1 Interface AbortController
   3.2 Interface AbortSignal
   3.3 Using AbortController and AbortSignal objects in APIs
4 Nodes
  4.1 Introduction to "The DOM"
  4.2 Node tree
     4.2.1 Document tree
     4.2.2 Shadow tree
        4.2.2.1 Slots
        4.2.2.2 Slottables
        4.2.2.3 Finding slots and slottables
        4.2.2.4 Assigning slottables and slots
        4.2.2.5 Signaling slot change
     4.2.3 Mutation algorithms
     4.2.4 Mixin NonElementParentNode
     4.2.5 Mixin DocumentOrShadowRoot
     4.2.6 Mixin ParentNode
     4.2.7 Mixin NonDocumentTypeChildNode
     4.2.8 Mixin ChildNode
     4.2.9 Mixin Slottable
     4.2.10 Old-style collections: NodeList and HTMLCollection
        4.2.10.1 Interface NodeList
        4.2.10.2 Interface HTMLCollection
   4.3 Mutation observers
     4.3.1 Interface MutationObserver
     4.3.2 Queuing a mutation record
     4.3.3 Interface MutationRecord
     4.3.4 Garbage collection
   4.4 Interface Node
   4.5 Interface Document
```

File an issue about the selected text 1

- 4.6 Interface DocumentType
- 4.7 Interface DocumentFragment
- 4.8 Interface ShadowRoot
- 4.9 Interface Element
 - 4.9.1 Interface NamedNodeMap
 - 4.9.2 Interface Attr
- 4.10 Interface CharacterData
- 4.11 Interface Text
- 4.12 Interface CDATASection
- 4.13 Interface ProcessingInstruction
- 4.14 Interface Comment
- 5 Ranges
 - 5.1 Introduction to "DOM Ranges"
 - 5.2 Boundary points
 - 5.3 Interface AbstractRange
 - 5.4 Interface StaticRange
 - 5.5 Interface Range
- 6 Traversal
 - 6.1 Interface Node Iterator
 - 6.2 Interface TreeWalker
 - 6.3 Interface NodeFilter
- 7 Sets
 - 7.1 Interface DOMTokenList
- 8 XPath
 - 8.1 Interface XPathResult
 - 8.2 Interface XPathExpression
 - 8.3 Mixin XPathEvaluatorBase
 - 8.4 Interface XPathEvaluator
- 9 Historical
 - 9.1 DOM Events
 - 9.2 DOM Core
 - 9.3 DOM Ranges
 - 9.4 DOM Traversal
- <u>Acknowledgments</u>
- **Intellectual property rights**
- <u>Index</u>
 - Terms defined by this specification
 - Terms defined by reference
- **References**
 - **Normative References**
 - **Informative References**
- **IDL Index**

Goals

This specification standardizes the DOM. It does so as follows:

- By consolidating DOM Level 3 Core [<u>DOM-Level-3-Core</u>], Element Traversal [<u>ELEMENTTRAVERSAL</u>], Selectors API Level 2 [<u>SELECTORS-API2</u>], the "DOM Event Architecture" and "Basic Event Interfaces" chapters of DOM Level 3 Events [<u>uievents-20031107</u>] (specific types of events do not belong in the DOM Standard), and DOM Level 2 Traversal and Range [<u>DOM-Level-2-Traversal-Range</u>], and:
 - Aligning them with the JavaScript ecosystem where possible.
 - Aligning them with existing implementations.
 - Simplifying them as much as possible.
- 2. By moving features from the HTML Standard [HTML] that make more sense to be specified as part of the DOM Standard.
- 3. By defining a replacement for the "Mutation Events" and "Mutation Name Event Types" chapters of DOM Level 3 Events [uievents-20031107] as the old model was problematic.

Note

The old model is expected to be removed from implementations in due course.

4. By defining new features that simplify common DOM operations.

1. Infrastructure §

This specification depends on the Infra Standard. [INFRA]

Some of the terms used in this specification are defined in Encoding, Selectors, Web IDL, XML, and Namespaces in XML. [ENCODING] [SELECTORS4] [WEBIDL] [XML] [XML-NAMES]

The term context object is an alias for this.

Note

Usage of context object is deprecated in favor of this.

When extensions are needed, the DOM Standard can be updated accordingly, or a new standard can be written that hooks into the provided extensibility hooks for **applicable specifications**.

1.1. Trees §

A **tree** is a finite hierarchical tree structure. In **tree order** is preorder, depth-first traversal of a <u>tree</u>.

An object that **participates** in a <u>tree</u> has a **parent**, which is either null or an object, and has **children**, which is an <u>ordered</u> set of objects. An object A whose <u>parent</u> is object B is a <u>child</u> of B.

The **root** of an object is itself, if its <u>parent</u> is null, or else it is the <u>root</u> of its <u>parent</u>. The <u>root</u> of a <u>tree</u> is any object <u>participating</u> in that <u>tree</u> whose <u>parent</u> is null.

An object A is called a **descendant** of an object B, if either A is a <u>child</u> of B or A is a <u>child</u> of an object C that is a <u>descendant</u> of B.

An **inclusive descendant** is an object or one of its <u>descendants</u>.

An object A is called an **ancestor** of an object B if and only if B is a <u>descendant</u> of A.

An **inclusive ancestor** is an object or one of its <u>ancestors</u>.

An object A is called a **sibling** of an object B, if and only if B and A share the same non-null <u>parent</u>.

An **inclusive sibling** is an object or one of its <u>siblings</u>.

An object A is **preceding** an object B if A and B are in the same <u>tree</u> and A comes before B in <u>tree order</u>.

An object A is **following** an object B if A and B are in the same <u>tree</u> and A comes after B in <u>tree order</u>.

The **first child** of an object is its first <u>child</u> or null if it has no <u>children</u>.

The **last child** of an object is its last <u>child</u> or null if it has no <u>children</u>.

The **previous sibling** of an object is its first <u>preceding sibling</u> or null if it has no <u>preceding sibling</u>.

The **next sibling** of an object is its first <u>following sibling</u> or null if it has no <u>following sibling</u>.

The **index** of an object is its number of <u>preceding siblings</u>, or 0 if it has none.

1.2. Ordered sets §

File an issue about the selected text

The **ordered set parser** takes a string input and then runs these steps:

- 1. Let inputTokens be the result of <u>splitting input on ASCII whitespace</u>.
- 2. Let tokens be a new ordered set.
- 3. For each token in inputTokens, append token to tokens.
- 4. Return tokens.

The **ordered set serializer** takes a set and returns the <u>concatenation</u> of set using U+0020 SPACE.

1.3. Selectors §

To **scope-match a selectors string** selectors against a node, run these steps:

- 1. Let s be the result of parse a selector selectors. [SELECTORS4]
- 2. If s is failure, then throw a "SyntaxError" DOMException.
- 3. Return the result of match a selector against a tree with s and node' s root using scoping root node. [SELECTORS4].

Note

Support for namespaces within selectors is not planned and will not be added.

1.4. Namespaces §

To **validate** a qualifiedName, <u>throw</u> an "<u>InvalidCharacterError</u>" <u>DOMException</u> if qualifiedName does not match the <u>Name</u> or <u>QName</u> production.

To validate and extract a namespace and qualifiedName, run these steps:

- 1. If namespace is the empty string, set it to null.
- 2. Validate qualifiedName.
- 3. Let prefix be null.
- 4. Let localName be qualifiedName.
- 5. If qualifiedName contains a ":" (U+003E), then split the string on it and set prefix to the part before and localName to the part after.
- 6. If prefix is non-null and namespace is null, then throw a "NamespaceError" DOMException.
- 7. If prefix is "xml" and namespace is not the XML namespace, then throw a "NamespaceError" DOMException.
- 8. If either qualifiedName or prefix is "xmlns" and namespace is not the <u>XMLNS namespace</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "NamespaceError" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 9. If namespace is the <u>XMLNS namespace</u> and neither qualifiedName nor prefix is "xmlns", then <u>throw</u> a "<u>NamespaceError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 10. Return namespace, prefix, and localName.

2. Events §

2.1. Introduction to "DOM Events" §

Throughout the web platform <u>events</u> are <u>dispatched</u> to objects to signal an occurrence, such as network activity or user interaction. These objects implement the <u>EventTarget</u> interface and can therefore add <u>event listeners</u> to observe <u>events</u> by calling <u>addEventListener()</u>:

```
obj.addEventListener("load", imgFetched)
function imgFetched(ev) {
   // great success
   ...
}
```

<u>Event listeners</u> can be removed by utilizing the <u>removeEventListener()</u> method, passing the same arguments.

<u>Events</u> are objects too and implement the <u>Event</u> interface (or a derived interface). In the example above ev is the <u>event</u>, ev is passed as an argument to the <u>event listener</u>'s <u>callback</u> (typically a JavaScript Function as shown above). <u>Event listeners</u> key off the <u>event</u>'s <u>type</u> attribute value ("load" in the above example). The <u>event</u>'s <u>target</u> attribute value returns the object to which the <u>event</u> was <u>dispatched</u> (obj above).

Although <u>events</u> are typically <u>dispatched</u> by the user agent as the result of user interaction or the completion of some task, applications can <u>dispatch events</u> themselves by using what are commonly known as synthetic events:

```
// add an appropriate event listener
obj.addEventListener("cat", function(e) { process(e.detail) })

// create and dispatch the event
var event = new CustomEvent("cat", {"detail":{"hazcheeseburger":true}})
obj.dispatchEvent(event)
```

Apart from signaling, <u>events</u> are sometimes also used to let an application control what happens next in an operation. For instance as part of form submission an <u>event</u> whose <u>type</u> attribute value is "submit" is <u>dispatched</u>. If this <u>event</u>' s <u>preventDefault()</u> method is invoked, form submission will be terminated. Applications who wish to make use of this functionality through <u>events</u> <u>dispatched</u> by the application (synthetic events) can make use of the return value of the <u>dispatchEvent()</u> method:

```
if(obj.dispatchEvent(event)) {
   // event was not canceled, time for some magic
   ...
}
```

When an <u>event</u> is <u>dispatched</u> to an object that <u>participates</u> in a <u>tree</u> (e.g., an <u>element</u>), it can reach <u>event listeners</u> on that object' s <u>ancestors</u> too. Effectively, all the object' s <u>inclusive ancestor event listeners</u> whose <u>capture</u> is true are invoked, in <u>tree order</u>. And then, if <u>event</u>' s <u>bubbles</u> is true, all the object' s <u>inclusive ancestor event listeners</u> whose <u>capture</u> is false are invoked, now in reverse <u>tree order</u>.

Let' s look at an example of how events work in a tree:

```
<!doctype html>
<html>
<head>
<title>Boring example</title>
```

File an issue about the selected text

The debug function will be invoked twice. Each time the <u>event</u>' s <u>target</u> attribute value will be the <u>span element</u>. The first time <u>currentTarget</u> attribute' s value will be the <u>document</u>, the second time the <u>body element</u>, <u>eventPhase</u> attribute' s value switches from <u>CAPTURING PHASE</u> to <u>BUBBLING PHASE</u>. If an <u>event listener</u> was registered for the <u>span element</u>, <u>eventPhase</u> attribute' s value would have been <u>AT TARGET</u>.

2.2. Interface Event §

```
✓ MDN
```

```
ID
     [<u>Exposed</u>=(Window, Worker, AudioWorklet)]
     interface Event {
        constructor(DOMString type, optional EventInit eventInitDict = {});
        readonly attribute DOMString type;
        readonly attribute <a>EventTarget</a>? <a>target</a>;
        readonly attribute <a href="EventTarget">EventTarget</a>? <a href="screen: srcElement">srcElement</a>; // historical
        readonly attribute <a href="EventTarget">EventTarget</a>? <a href="currentTarget">currentTarget</a>;
        sequence \langle EventTarget \rangle composedPath();
        const unsigned short NONE = 0;
        const unsigned short CAPTURING PHASE = 1;
        const unsigned short AT TARGET = 2;
        const unsigned short BUBBLING PHASE = 3;
        readonly attribute unsigned short eventPhase;
        undefined stopPropagation();
                   attribute <a href="boolean">boolean</a> <a href="cancelBubble">cancelBubble</a>; // historical alias of .stopPropagation
       undefined stopImmediatePropagation();
        readonly attribute boolean bubbles;
        readonly attribute boolean cancelable;
                   attribute boolean returnValue; // historical
        undefined preventDefault();
        readonly attribute boolean defaultPrevented;
       readonly attribute boolean composed;
        [LegacyUnforgeable] readonly attribute boolean isTrusted;
        readonly attribute <a href="DOMHighResTimeStamp">DOMHighResTimeStamp</a> timeStamp;
```

File an issue about the selected text

```
undefined initEvent(DOMString type, optional boolean bubbles = false, optional boolean cancelable =
false); // historical
};

dictionary EventInit {
   boolean bubbles = false;
   boolean cancelable = false;
   boolean composed = false;
};
```

An <u>Event</u> object is simply named an **event**. It allows for signaling that something has occurred, e.g., that an image has completed downloading.

A potential event target is null or an EventTarget object.

An event has an associated target (a potential event target). Unless stated otherwise it is null.

An event has an associated relatedTarget (a potential event target). Unless stated otherwise it is null.

Note

Other specifications use relatedTarget to define a relatedTarget attribute. [UIEVENTS]

An <u>event</u> has an associated **touch target list** (a <u>list</u> of zero or more <u>potential event targets</u>). Unless stated otherwise it is the empty list.

Note

File an issue about the selected text

The <u>touch target list</u> is for the exclusive use of defining the <u>TouchEvent</u> interface and related interfaces. [<u>TOUCH-EVENTS</u>]

An <u>event</u> has an associated **path**. A <u>path</u> is a <u>list</u> of <u>structs</u>. Each <u>struct</u> consists of an <u>invocation target</u> (an <u>EventTarget</u> object), an <u>invocation-target-in-shadow-tree</u> (a boolean), a <u>shadow-adjusted target</u> (a <u>potential event target</u>), a <u>relatedTarget</u> (a <u>potential event target</u>), a <u>touch target list</u> (a <u>list</u> of <u>potential event targets</u>), a <u>root-of-closed-tree</u> (a boolean), and a <u>slot-in-closed-tree</u> (a boolean). A <u>path</u> is initially the empty list.

```
For web developers (non-normative)
 event = new <u>Event(type [, eventInitDict])</u>
     Returns a new event whose type attribute value is set to type. The eventInitDict argument allows for setting the
    bubbles and cancelable attributes via object members of the same name.
 event . type
     Returns the type of event, e.g. "click", "hashchange", or "submit".
     Returns the object to which event is dispatched (its target).
 event . <u>currentTarget</u>
     Returns the object whose event listener's callback is currently being invoked.
 event . <a href="mailto:composedPath">composedPath()</a>
    Returns the invocation target objects of event' s path (objects on which listeners will be invoked), except for any
    nodes in shadow trees of which the shadow root's mode is "closed" that are not reachable from event's
    currentTarget.
 event . eventPhase
    Returns the event' s phase, which is one of NONE, CAPTURING PHASE, AT TARGET, and BUBBLING PHASE.
 event . stopPropagation()
    When <u>dispatched</u> in a <u>tree</u>, invoking this method prevents event from reaching any objects other than the current
    object.
 event . stopImmediatePropagation()
```

Invoking this method prevents event from reaching any registered <u>event listeners</u> after the current one finishes running and, when <u>dispatched</u> in a <u>tree</u>, also prevents event from reaching any other objects.

```
event . <u>bubbles</u>
```

Returns true or false depending on how event was initialized. True if event goes through its <u>target</u>' s <u>ancestors</u> in reverse <u>tree order</u>, and false otherwise.

```
event . <u>cancelable</u>
```

Returns true or false depending on how event was initialized. Its return value does not always carry meaning, but true can indicate that part of the operation during which event was <u>dispatched</u>, can be canceled by invoking the <u>preventDefault()</u> method.

```
event . preventDefault()
```

If invoked when the <u>cancelable</u> attribute value is true, and while executing a listener for the event with <u>passive</u> set to false, signals to the operation that caused event to be <u>dispatched</u> that it needs to be canceled.

```
event . <u>defaultPrevented</u>
```

Returns true if preventDefault() was invoked successfully to indicate cancelation, and false otherwise.

```
event . composed
```

Returns true or false depending on how event was initialized. True if event invokes listeners past a ShadowRoot node that is the root of its target, and false otherwise.

```
event . <u>isTrusted</u>
```

Returns true if event was <u>dispatched</u> by the user agent, and false otherwise.

```
event . <u>timeStamp</u>
```

Returns the event's timestamp as the number of milliseconds measured relative to the time origin.

The type attribute must return the value it was initialized to. When an event is created the attribute must be initialized to the empty string.

The target attribute's getter, when invoked, must return this's target.

The srcElement attribute's getter, when invoked, must return this's target.

The <u>currentTarget</u> attribute must return the value it was initialized to. When an <u>event</u> is created the attribute must be initialized to null.

The composedPath() method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let composedPath be an empty list.
- 2. Let path be this' s path.
- 3. If path <u>is empty</u>, then return composedPath.
- 4. Let currentTarget be this' s currentTarget attribute value.
- 5. Append currentTarget to composedPath.
- 6. Let currentTargetIndex be 0.
- 7. Let currentTargetHiddenSubtreeLevel be 0.
- 8. Let index be path' s size 1.
- 9. While index is greater than or equal to 0:
 - 1. If path[index]'s <u>root-of-closed-tree</u> is true, then increase currentTargetHiddenSubtreeLevel by 1.
 - 2. If path[index]'s invocation target is currentTarget, then set currentTargetIndex to index and break.
 - 3. If path[index]'s slot-in-closed-tree is true, then decrease currentTargetHiddenSubtreeLevel by 1.
 - 4. Decrease index by 1.
- 10 Lat averagetHiddenSubtreeLevel.

File an issue about the selected text

- 11. Set index to currentTargetIndex 1.
- 12. While index is greater than or equal to 0:
 - 1. If path[index]'s root-of-closed-tree is true, then increase currentHiddenLevel by 1.
 - 2. If currentHiddenLevel is less than or equal to maxHiddenLevel, then <u>prepend</u> path[index]'s <u>invocation target</u> to composedPath.
 - 3. If path[index]'s slot-in-closed-tree is true, then:
 - 1. Decrease currentHiddenLevel by 1.
 - 2. If currentHiddenLevel is less than maxHiddenLevel, then set maxHiddenLevel to currentHiddenLevel.
 - 4. Decrease index by 1.
- 13. Set currentHiddenLevel and maxHiddenLevel to currentTargetHiddenSubtreeLevel.
- 14. Set index to currentTargetIndex + 1.
- 15. While index is less than path' s size:
 - 1. If path[index]'s slot-in-closed-tree is true, then increase currentHiddenLevel by 1.
 - 2. If currentHiddenLevel is less than or equal to maxHiddenLevel, then <u>append</u> path[index]'s <u>invocation target</u> to composedPath.
 - 3. If path[index]'s <u>root-of-closed-tree</u> is true, then:
 - 1. Decrease currentHiddenLevel by 1.
 - 2. If currentHiddenLevel is less than maxHiddenLevel, then set maxHiddenLevel to currentHiddenLevel.
 - 4. Increase index by 1.
- 16. Return composedPath.

The eventPhase attribute must return the value it was initialized to, which must be one of the following:



NONE (numeric value 0)

Events not currently <u>dispatched</u> are in this phase.

CAPTURING_PHASE (numeric value 1)

When an event is dispatched to an object that participates in a tree it will be in this phase before it reaches its target.

AT_TARGET (numeric value 2)

When an event is dispatched it will be in this phase on its target.

BUBBLING_PHASE (numeric value 3)

When an event is dispatched to an object that participates in a tree it will be in this phase after it reaches its target.

Initially the attribute must be initialized to NONE.

Each event has the following associated flags that are all initially unset:

- stop propagation flag
- · stop immediate propagation flag
- canceled flag
- · in passive listener flag
- · composed flag
- initialized flag

File an issue about the selected text

· dispatch flag

The stopPropagation () method, when invoked, must set this' s stop propagation flag.



The cancelBubble attribute's getter, when invoked, must return true if this's stop propagation flag is set, and false otherwise.

The <u>cancelBubble</u> attribute's setter, when invoked, must set <u>this</u>'s <u>stop propagation flag</u> if the given value is true, and do nothing otherwise.

The stopImmediatePropagation() method, when invoked, must set this's stop propagation flag and this's stop immediate propagation flag.

The bubbles and cancelable attributes must return the values they were initialized to.

To **set the canceled flag**, given an <u>event</u> event, if event' s <u>cancelable</u> attribute value is true and event' s <u>in passive</u> <u>listener flag</u> is unset, then set event' s <u>canceled flag</u>, and do nothing otherwise.

The returnValue attribute' s getter, when invoked, must return false if this' s canceled flag is set, and true otherwise.

The <u>returnValue</u> attribute' s setter, when invoked, must <u>set the canceled flag</u> with <u>this</u> if the given value is false, and do nothing otherwise.

The preventDefault () method, when invoked, must set the canceled flag with this.

Note

There are scenarios where invoking <u>preventDefault()</u> has no effect. User agents are encouraged to log the precise cause in a developer console, to aid debugging.

The defaultPrevented attribute's getter, when invoked, must return true if this's canceled flag is set, and false otherwise.

The composed attribute's getter, when invoked, must return true if this's composed flag is set, and false otherwise.

The <u>isTrusted</u> attribute must return the value it was initialized to. When an <u>event</u> is created the attribute must be initialized to false.

Note

<u>isTrusted</u> is a convenience that indicates whether an <u>event</u> is <u>dispatched</u> by the user agent (as opposed to using <u>dispatchEvent()</u>). The sole legacy exception is <u>click()</u>, which causes the user agent to dispatch an <u>event</u> whose <u>isTrusted</u> attribute is initialized to false.

The timeStamp attribute must return the value it was initialized to.

To **initialize** an event, with type, bubbles, and cancelable, run these steps:

- 1. Set event's initialized flag.
- 2. Unset event's stop propagation flag, stop immediate propagation flag, and canceled flag.
- 3. Set event's <u>isTrusted</u> attribute to false.
- 4. Set event's target to null.
- 5. Set event' s type attribute to type.
- 6. Set event's <u>bubbles</u> attribute to bubbles.

File an issue about the selected text

7. Set event' s <u>cancelable</u> attribute to cancelable.

The initEvent (type, bubbles, cancelable) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If this' s dispatch flag is set, then return.
- 2. <u>Initialize</u> this with type, bubbles, and cancelable.

Note

<u>initEvent()</u> is redundant with <u>event</u> constructors and incapable of setting <u>composed</u>. It has to be supported for legacy content.

2.3. Legacy extensions to the **Window** interface §

```
partial interface <u>Window</u> {

L [<u>Replaceable</u>] readonly attribute <u>any event</u>; // historical
};
```

Each <u>Window</u> object has an associated **current event** (undefined or an <u>Event</u> object). Unless stated otherwise it is undefined.

The event attribute' s getter, when invoked, must return this' s current event.

Note

Web developers are strongly encouraged to instead rely on the <u>Event</u> object passed to event listeners, as that will result in more portable code. This attribute is not available in workers or worklets, and is inaccurate for events dispatched in <u>shadow trees</u>.

2.4. Interface <u>CustomEvent</u> §

```
[Exposed=(Window, Worker)]
interface CustomEvent : Event {
    constructor(DOMString type, optional CustomEventInit eventInitDict = {});
    readonly attribute any detail;

    undefined initCustomEvent(DOMString type, optional boolean bubbles = false, optional boolean cancelable = false, optional any detail = null); // historical
};

dictionary CustomEventInit : EventInit {
    any detail = null;
};
```

Events using the **CustomEvent** interface can be used to carry custom data.

```
For web developers (non-normative)
  event = new <u>CustomEvent(type [, eventInitDict])</u>
```

Works analogously to the constructor for <u>Event</u> except that the eventInitDict argument now allows for setting the <u>detail</u> attribute too.

```
event . detail
```

Returns any custom data event was created with. Typically used for synthetic events.

File an issue about the selected text

The detail attribute must return the value it was initialized to.



The initCustomEvent (type, bubbles, cancelable, detail) method must, when invoked, run these steps:

- 1. If this' s dispatch flag is set, then return.
- 2. Initialize this with type, bubbles, and cancelable.
- 3. Set this' s detail attribute to detail.

2.5. Constructing events §

<u>Specifications</u> may define **event constructing steps** for all or some <u>events</u>. The algorithm is passed an event as indicated in the <u>inner event creation steps</u>.

Note

This construct can be used by <u>Event</u> subclasses that have a more complex structure than a simple 1:1 mapping between their initializing dictionary members and IDL attributes.

When a **constructor** of the <u>Event</u> interface, or of an interface that inherits from the <u>Event</u> interface, is invoked, these steps must be run, given the arguments type and eventInitDict:

- 1. Let event be the result of running the inner event creation steps with this interface, null, now, and eventInitDict.
- 2. Initialize event's type attribute to type.
- 3. Return event.

To **create an event** using eventInterface, which must be either <u>Event</u> or an interface that inherits from it, and optionally given a <u>Realm</u> realm, run these steps:

- 1. If realm is not given, then set it to null.
- 2. Let dictionary be the result of <u>converting</u> the JavaScript value undefined to the dictionary type accepted by eventInterface' s constructor. (This dictionary type will either be <u>EventInit</u> or a dictionary that inherits from it.)

This does not work if members are required; see whatwg/dom#600

- 3. Let event be the result of running the <u>inner event creation steps</u> with eventInterface, realm, the time of the occurrence that the event is signaling, and dictionary.
- ¶ Example

In macOS the time of the occurrence for input actions is available via the timestamp property of NSEvent objects.

- 4. Initialize event's <u>isTrusted</u> attribute to true.
- 5. Return event.

Note

<u>Create an event</u> is meant to be used by other specifications which need to separately <u>create</u> and <u>dispatch</u> events, instead of simply <u>firing</u> them. It ensures the event' s attributes are initialized to the correct defaults.

The inner event creation steps, given an interface, realm, time, and dictionary, are as follows:

1. Let event be the result of creating a new object using eventInterface. If realm is non-null, then use that Realm; otherwise, use the default behavior defined in Web IDL.

As of the time of this writing Web IDL does not yet define any default behavior; see heycam/webidl#135.

2 Set event's initialized flag File an issue about the selected text

3. Initialize event's timeStamp attribute to a DOMHighResTimeStamp representing the high resolution time from the time origin to time.

∆Warning!

User agents should set a minimum resolution of event's timeStamp attribute to 5 microseconds following the existing clock resolution recommendation. [HR-TIME]

- 4. For each member → value in dictionary, if event has an attribute whose identifier is member, then initialize that attribute to value.
- 5. Run the event constructing steps with event.
- 6. Return event.

2.6. Defining event interfaces §

In general, when defining a new interface that inherits from Event please always ask feedback from the WHATWG or the W3C WebApps WG community.

The <u>CustomEvent</u> interface can be used as starting point. However, do not introduce any init*Event() methods as they are redundant with constructors. Interfaces that inherit from the Event interface that have such a method only have it for historical reasons.

2.7. Interface EventTarget §

L

```
ID
    [<u>Exposed</u>=(Window, Worker, AudioWorklet)]
    interface EventTarget {
      constructor();
      undefined addEventListener (DOMString type, EventListener? callback, optional (AddEventListenerOptions
    or boolean) options = {});
      undefined removeEventListener(DOMString type, EventListener? callback, optional (EventListenerOptions
    or boolean) options = {});
      boolean dispatchEvent(Event event);
    callback interface EventListener {
      undefined handleEvent(Event event);
    };
    dictionary EventListenerOptions {
      boolean capture = false;
    dictionary AddEventListenerOptions : <u>EventListenerOptions</u> {
      boolean passive = false;
      boolean once = false;
```

An EventTarget object represents a target to which an event can be dispatched when something has occurred.

Each EventTarget object has an associated event listener list (a list of zero or more event listeners). It is initially the empty list.

event and consists of: File an issue about the selected text

- type (a string)
- callback (null or an EventListener object)
- capture (a boolean, initially false)
- passive (a boolean, initially false)
- once (a boolean, initially false)
- removed (a boolean for bookkeeping purposes, initially false)

Note

Although <u>callback</u> is an <u>EventListener</u> object, an <u>event listener</u> is a broader concept as can be seen above.

Each <u>EventTarget</u> object also has an associated **get the parent** algorithm, which takes an <u>event</u> event, and returns an <u>EventTarget</u> object. Unless specified otherwise it returns null.

Note

Nodes, shadow roots, and documents override the get the parent algorithm.

Each <u>EventTarget</u> object can have an associated **activation behavior** algorithm. The <u>activation behavior</u> algorithm is passed an <u>event</u>, as indicated in the <u>dispatch</u> algorithm.

Note

This exists because user agents perform certain actions for certain <u>EventTarget</u> objects, e.g., the <u>area</u> element, in response to synthetic <u>MouseEvent</u> events whose <u>type</u> attribute is click. Web compatibility prevented it from being removed and it is now the enshrined way of defining an activation of something. [HTML]

Each <u>EventTarget</u> object that has <u>activation behavior</u>, can additionally have both (not either) a **legacy-pre-activation behavior** algorithm and a **legacy-canceled-activation behavior** algorithm.

Note

These algorithms only exist for checkbox and radio <u>input</u> elements and are not to be used for anything else. [HTML]

For web developers (non-normative)

```
target = new EventTarget();
```

Creates a new EventTarget object, which can be used by developers to dispatch and listen for events.

```
target . <a href="mailto:addEventListener">addEventListener</a>(type, callback [, options])
```

Appends an <u>event listener</u> for <u>events</u> whose <u>type</u> attribute value is type. The callback argument sets the <u>callback</u> that will be invoked when the <u>event</u> is <u>dispatched</u>.

The options argument sets listener-specific options. For compatibility this can be a boolean, in which case the method behaves exactly as if the value was specified as options' s <u>capture</u>.

When set to true, options' s <u>capture</u> prevents <u>callback</u> from being invoked when the <u>event</u>' s <u>eventPhase</u> attribute value is <u>BUBBLING PHASE</u>. When false (or not present), <u>callback</u> will not be invoked when <u>event</u>' s <u>eventPhase</u> attribute value is <u>CAPTURING PHASE</u>. Either way, <u>callback</u> will be invoked if <u>event</u>' s <u>eventPhase</u> attribute value is <u>AT TARGET</u>.

When set to true, options' s <u>passive</u> indicates that the <u>callback</u> will not cancel the event by invoking <u>preventDefault()</u>. This is used to enable performance optimizations described in § 2.8 Observing event listeners.

When set to true, options' s <u>once</u> indicates that the <u>callback</u> will only be invoked once after which the event listener will be removed.

The <u>event listener</u> is appended to target' s <u>event listener list</u> and is not appended if it has the same <u>type</u>, <u>callback</u>, and <u>capture</u>.

```
target . removeEventListener(type, callback [, options])
```

Removes the <u>event listener</u> in target' s <u>event listener list</u> with the same type, callback, and options.

```
target . <u>dispatchEvent</u>(event)
```

<u>Dispatches</u> a synthetic event event to target and returns true if either event' s <u>cancelable</u> attribute value is false or its <u>preventDefault()</u> method was not invoked, and false otherwise.

To **flatten** options, run these steps:

File an issue about the selected text

- 1. If options is a boolean, then return options.
- 2. Return options' s capture.

To **flatten more** options, run these steps:

- 1. Let capture be the result of <u>flattening</u> options.
- 2. Let once and passive be false.
- 3. If options is a dictionary, then set passive to options' spassive and once to options' sonce.
- 4. Return capture, passive, and once.

The EventTarget () constructor, when invoked, must return a new EventTarget.



Note

Because of the defaults stated elsewhere, the returned <u>EventTarget</u>'s <u>get the parent</u> algorithm will return null, and it will have no <u>activation behavior</u>, <u>legacy-pre-activation behavior</u>, or <u>legacy-canceled-activation behavior</u>.

Note

In the future we could allow custom <u>get the parent</u> algorithms. Let us know if this would be useful for your programs. For now, all author-created <u>EventTarget</u>s do not participate in a tree structure.

To add an event listener, given an EventTarget object eventTarget and an event listener listener, run these steps:

- 1. If eventTarget is a ServiceWorkerGlobalScope object, its service worker sacript resource's has ever been evaluated flag is set, and listener's type matches the type attribute value of any of the service worker events, then report a warning to the console that this might not give the expected results. [SERVICE-WORKERS]
- 2. If listener's callback is null, then return.
- 3. If eventTarget' s <u>event listener list</u> does not <u>contain</u> an <u>event listener</u> whose <u>type</u> is listener' s <u>type</u>, <u>callback</u> is listener' s <u>capture</u> is listener' s <u>capture</u>, then <u>append</u> listener to eventTarget' s <u>event listener list</u>.

Note

The add an event listener concept exists to ensure event handlers use the same code path. [HTML]



The addEventListener (type, callback, options) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let capture, passive, and once be the result of <u>flattening more</u> options.
- 2. <u>Add an event listener</u> with <u>this</u> and an <u>event listener</u> whose <u>type</u> is type, <u>callback</u> is callback, <u>capture</u> is capture, <u>passive</u> is passive, and <u>once</u> is once.

To **remove an event listener**, given an **EventTarget** object eventTarget and an **event listener** listener, run these steps:

- 1. If eventTarget is a ServiceWorkerGlobalScope object and its service worker set of event types to handle contains type, then Teport a warning to the console that this might not give the expected results. [SERVICE-WORKERS]
- 2. Set listener' s removed to true and remove listener from eventTarget' s event listener list.

Note

HTML needs this to define event handlers. [HTML]

To **remove all event listeners**, given an <u>EventTarget</u> object eventTarget, <u>for each</u> listener of eventTarget' s <u>event listener</u> <u>list, remove an event listener</u> with eventTarget and listener.

Note

HTML needs this to define document. open(). [HTML]



The removeEventListener (type collback, options) method, when invoked, must run these steps: File an issue about the selected text

- 1. Let capture be the result of <u>flattening</u> options.
- 2. If <u>this</u>' s <u>event listener list contains</u> an <u>event listener</u> whose <u>type</u> is type, <u>callback</u> is callback, and <u>capture</u> is capture, then <u>remove an event listener</u> with <u>this</u> and that <u>event listener</u>.

Note

The event listener list will not contain multiple event listeners with equal type, callback, and capture, as <u>add an event listener</u> prevents that.

The dispatchEvent (event) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If event's <u>dispatch flag</u> is set, or if its <u>initialized flag</u> is not set, then <u>throw</u> an "<u>InvalidStateError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. Initialize event's <u>isTrusted</u> attribute to false.
- 3. Return the result of dispatching event to this.

2.8. Observing event listeners §

In general, developers do not expect the presence of an <u>event listener</u> to be observable. The impact of an <u>event listener</u> is determined by its <u>callback</u>. That is, a developer adding a no-op <u>event listener</u> would not expect it to have any side effects.

Unfortunately, some event APIs have been designed such that implementing them efficiently requires observing <u>event listeners</u>. This can make the presence of listeners observable in that even empty listeners can have a dramatic performance impact on the behavior of the application. For example, touch and wheel events which can be used to block asynchronous scrolling. In some cases this problem can be mitigated by specifying the event to be <u>cancelable</u> only when there is at least one non-<u>passive</u> listener. For example, non-<u>passive TouchEvent</u> listeners must block scrolling, but if all listeners are <u>passive</u> then scrolling can be allowed to start <u>in parallel</u> by making the <u>TouchEvent</u> uncancelable (so that calls to <u>preventDefault()</u> are ignored). So code dispatching an event is able to observe the absence of non-<u>passive</u> listeners, and use that to clear the <u>cancelable</u> property of the event being dispatched.

Ideally, any new event APIs are defined such that they do not need this property (use public-script-coord@w3.org for discussion).

2.9. Dispatching events §

To **dispatch** an event to a target, with an optional legacy target override flag and an optional legacyOutputDidListenersThrowFlag, run these steps:

- 1. Set event's dispatch flag.
- 2. Let targetOverride be target, if legacy target override flag is not given, and target's associated Document otherwise.

 [HTML]

Note

legacy target override flag is only used by HTML and only when target is a Window object.

- 3. Let activationTarget be null.
- 4. Let relatedTarget be the result of <u>retargeting</u> event' s <u>relatedTarget</u> against target.
- 5. If target is not relatedTarget or target is event' s relatedTarget, then:
 - 1. Let touchTargets be a new <u>list</u>.
 - 2. <u>For each</u> touchTarget of event' s <u>touch target list</u>, <u>append</u> the result of <u>retargeting</u> touchTarget against target to touchTargets.
 - 3. Append to an event path with event, target, targetOverride, relatedTarget, touchTargets, and false.

File an issue about the selected text

4. Let isActivationEvent be true, if event is a MouseEvent object and event's type attribute is "click", and false otherwise.

- 5. If isActivationEvent is true and target has activation behavior, then set activationTarget to target.
- 6. Let slottable be target, if target is a slottable and is assigned, and null otherwise.
- 7. Let slot-in-closed-tree be false.
- 8. Let parent be the result of invoking target's get the parent with event.
- 9. While parent is non-null:
 - 1. If slottable is non-null:
 - 1. Assert: parent is a slot.
 - 2. Set slottable to null.
 - 3. If parent' s root is a shadow root whose mode is "closed", then set slot-in-closed-tree to true.
 - 2. If parent is a slottable and is assigned, then set slottable to parent.
 - 3. Let relatedTarget be the result of <u>retargeting</u> event' s <u>relatedTarget</u> against parent.
 - 4. Let touchTargets be a new list.
 - 5. <u>For each</u> touchTarget of event' s <u>touch target list</u>, <u>append</u> the result of <u>retargeting</u> touchTarget against parent to touchTargets.
 - 6. If parent is a <u>Window</u> object, or parent is a <u>node</u> and target' s <u>root</u> is a <u>shadow-including inclusive</u> <u>ancestor</u> of parent, then:
 - 1. If isActivationEvent is true, event' s <u>bubbles</u> attribute is true, activationTarget is null, and parent has <u>activation behavior</u>, then set activationTarget to parent.
 - 2. <u>Append to an event path</u> with event, parent, null, relatedTarget, touchTargets, and slot-in-closed-tree.
 - 7. Otherwise, if parent is related Target, then set parent to null.
 - 8. Otherwise, set target to parent and then:
 - 1. If isActivationEvent is true, activationTarget is null, and target has <u>activation behavior</u>, then set activationTarget to target.
 - 2. <u>Append to an event path</u> with event, parent, target, relatedTarget, touchTargets, and slot-in-closed-tree.
 - 9. If parent is non-null, then set parent to the result of invoking parent's get the parent with event.
 - 10. Set slot-in-closed-tree to false.
- 10. Let clearTargetsStruct be the last struct in event's path whose shadow-adjusted target is non-null.
- 11. Let clearTargets be true if clearTargetsStruct's <u>shadow-adjusted target</u>, clearTargetsStruct's <u>relatedTarget</u>, or an <u>EventTarget</u> object in clearTargetsStruct's <u>touch target list</u> is a <u>node</u> and its <u>root</u> is a <u>shadow root</u>, and false otherwise.
- 12. If activationTarget is non-null and activationTarget has <u>legacy-pre-activation behavior</u>, then run activationTarget' s <u>legacy-pre-activation behavior</u>.
- 13. For each struct in event' s path, in reverse order:
 - 1. If struct's shadow-adjusted target is non-null, then set event's eventPhase attribute to AT TARGET.
 - 2. Otherwise, set event's eventPhase attribute to CAPTURING PHASE.
 - 3. <u>Invoke</u> with struct, event, "capturing", and legacyOutputDidListenersThrowFlag if given.
- 14. For each struct in event' s path:

File an issue about the selected text

1. If struct' s shadow-adjusted target is non-null, then set event' s eventPhase attribute to AT TARGET.

- 2. Otherwise:
 - 1. If event's <u>bubbles</u> attribute is false, then <u>continue</u>.
 - 2. Set event's eventPhase attribute to BUBBLING PHASE.
- 3. <u>Invoke</u> with struct, event, "bubbling", and legacyOutputDidListenersThrowFlag if given.
- 6. Set event's eventPhase attribute to NONE.
- 7. Set event's <u>currentTarget</u> attribute to null.
- 8. Set event' s path to the empty list.
- 9. Unset event's dispatch flag, stop propagation flag, and stop immediate propagation flag.
- 10. If clearTargets, then:
 - 1. Set event's target to null.
 - 2. Set event' s relatedTarget to null.
 - 3. Set event's to the empty list.
- 11. If activationTarget is non-null, then:
 - 1. If event's canceled flag is unset, then run activationTarget's activation behavior with event.
 - 2. Otherwise, if activationTarget has <u>legacy-canceled-activation behavior</u>, then run activationTarget' s <u>legacy-canceled-activation behavior</u>.
- 12. Return false if event' s <u>canceled flag</u> is set, and true otherwise.

To **append to an event path**, given an event, invocationTarget, shadowAdjustedTarget, relatedTarget, touchTargets, and a slot-in-closed-tree, run these steps:

- 1. Let invocationTargetInShadowTree be false.
- 2. If invocationTarget is a <u>node</u> and its <u>root</u> is a <u>shadow root</u>, then set invocationTargetInShadowTree to true.
- 3. Let root-of-closed-tree be false.
- 4. If invocationTarget is a shadow root whose mode is "closed", then set root-of-closed-tree to true.
- 5. <u>Append</u> a new <u>struct</u> to event' s <u>path</u> whose <u>invocation target</u> is invocationTarget, <u>invocation-target-in-shadow-tree</u> is invocationTargetInShadowTree, <u>shadow-adjusted target</u> is shadowAdjustedTarget, <u>relatedTarget</u> is relatedTarget, <u>touch target list</u> is touchTargets, <u>root-of-closed-tree</u> is root-of-closed-tree, and <u>slot-in-closed-tree</u> is slot-in-closed-tree.

To **invoke**, given a struct, event, phase, and an optional legacyOutputDidListenersThrowFlag, run these steps:

- 1. Set event' s <u>target</u> to the <u>shadow-adjusted target</u> of the last struct in event' s <u>path</u>, that is either struct or preceding struct, whose <u>shadow-adjusted target</u> is non-null.
- 2. Set event' s relatedTarget to struct' s relatedTarget.
- 3. Set event' s touch target list to struct' s touch target list.
- 4. If event' s stop propagation flag is set, then return.
- 5. Initialize event's currentTarget attribute to struct's invocation target.
- 6. Let listeners be a clone of event' s currentTarget attribute value' s event listener list.

Note

This avoids <u>event listeners</u> added after this point from being run. Note that removal still has an effect due to the <u>removed</u> field.

8. Let found be the result of running <u>inner invoke</u> with event, listeners, phase, invocationTargetInShadowTree, and legacyOutputDidListenersThrowFlag if given.

- 9. If found is false and event's <u>isTrusted</u> attribute is true, then:
 - 1. Let originalEventType be event' s type attribute value.
 - 2. If event' s <u>type</u> attribute value is a match for any of the strings in the first column in the following table, set event' s <u>type</u> attribute value to the string in the second column on the same row as the matching string, and return otherwise.

Event type	Legacy event type
"animationend"	"webkitAnimationEnd"
"animationiteration"	"webkitAnimationIteration"
"animationstart"	"webkitAnimationStart"
"transitionend"	"webkitTransitionEnd"

- 3. <u>Inner invoke</u> with event, listeners, phase, invocationTargetInShadowTree, and legacyOutputDidListenersThrowFlag if given.
- 4. Set event' s type attribute value to originalEventType.

To **inner invoke**, given an event, listeners, phase, invocationTargetInShadowTree, and an optional legacyOutputDidListenersThrowFlag, run these steps:

- 1. Let found be false.
- 2. For each listener in listeners, whose removed is false:
 - 1. If event' s type attribute value is not listener' s type, then continue.
 - 2. Set found to true.
 - 3. If phase is "capturing" and listener' s capture is false, then continue.
 - 4. If phase is "bubbling" and listener' s capture is true, then continue.
 - 5. If listener' s <u>once</u> is true, then <u>remove</u> listener from event' s <u>currentTarget</u> attribute value' s <u>event listener</u> list.
 - 6. Let global be listener callback' s associated Realm' s global object.
 - 7. Let currentEvent be undefined.
 - 8. If global is a Window object, then:
 - 1. Set currentEvent to global's current event.
 - 2. If invocationTargetInShadowTree is false, then set global's current event to event.
 - 9. If listener' s passive is true, then set event' s in passive listener flag.
 - 10. <u>Call a user object's operation</u> with listener's <u>callback</u>, "handleEvent", « event », and event's <u>currentTarget</u> attribute value. If this throws an exception, then:
 - 1. Report the exception.
 - 2. Set legacyOutputDidListenersThrowFlag if given.

Note

The legacyOutputDidListenersThrowFlag is only used by Indexed Database API. [INDEXEDDB]

- 11. Unset event's in passive listener flag.
- 12. If global is a Window object, then set global' s current event to current Event.
- 13. If event' s stop immediate propagation flag is set, then return found.

File an issue about the selected text

2.10. Firing events

To **fire an event** named e at target, optionally using an eventConstructor, with a description of how IDL attributes are to be initialized, and a legacy target override flag, run these steps:

- 1. If eventConstructor is not given, then let eventConstructor be Event.
- 2. Let event be the result of creating an event given eventConstructor, in the relevant Realm of target.
- 3. Initialize event's <u>type</u> attribute to e.
- 4. Initialize any other IDL attributes of event as described in the invocation of this algorithm.

Note

This also allows for the <u>isTrusted</u> attribute to be set to false.

5. Return the result of dispatching event at target, with legacy target override flag set if set.

Note

Fire in the context of DOM is short for <u>creating</u>, initializing, and <u>dispatching</u> an <u>event</u>. <u>Fire an event</u> makes that process easier to write down.

Example

If the <u>event</u> needs its <u>bubbles</u> or <u>cancelable</u> attribute initialized, one could write "<u>fire an event</u> named <u>submit</u> at target with its <u>cancelable</u> attribute initialized to true".

Or, when a custom constructor is needed, "<u>fire an event</u> named click at target using <u>MouseEvent</u> with its <u>detail</u> attribute initialized to 1".

Occasionally the return value is important:

- 1. Let doAction be the result of <u>firing an event</u> named like at target.
- 2. If doAction is true, then ...

2.11. Action versus occurrence

An <u>event</u> signifies an occurrence, not an action. Phrased differently, it represents a notification from an algorithm and can be used to influence the future course of that algorithm (e.g., through invoking <u>preventDefault()</u>). <u>Events</u> must not be used as actions or initiators that cause some algorithm to start running. That is not what they are for.

Note

This is called out here specifically because previous iterations of the DOM had a concept of "default actions" associated with <u>events</u> that gave folks all the wrong ideas. <u>Events</u> do not represent or cause actions, they can only be used to influence an ongoing one.

File an issue about the selected text

3. Aborting ongoing activities §

Though promises do not have a built-in aborting mechanism, many APIs using them require abort semantics.

<u>AbortController</u> is meant to support these requirements by providing an <u>abort()</u> method that toggles the state of a corresponding <u>AbortSignal</u> object. The API which wishes to support aborting can accept an <u>AbortSignal</u> object, and use its state to determine how to proceed.

APIs that rely upon <u>AbortController</u> are encouraged to respond to <u>abort()</u> by rejecting any unsettled promise with a new "<u>AbortError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.

Example

A hypothetical doAmazingness({ ... }) method could accept an <u>AbortSignal</u> object in order to support aborting as follows:

```
const controller = new AbortController();
const signal = controller.signal;

startSpinner();

doAmazingness({ ..., signal })
   .then(result => ...)
   .catch(err => {
    if (err.name == 'AbortError') return;
    showUserErrorMessage();
   })
   .then(() => stopSpinner());

// ...

controller.abort();
```

doAmazingness could be implemented as follows:

```
function doAmazingness({signal}) {
  if (signal.aborted) {
    return Promise.reject(new DOMException('Aborted', 'AbortError'));
}

return new Promise((resolve, reject) => {
    // Begin doing amazingness, and call resolve(result) when done.
    // But also, watch for signals:
    signal.addEventListener('abort', () => {
        // Stop doing amazingness, and:
        reject(new DOMException('Aborted', 'AbortError'));
    });
});
});
```

APIs that require more granular control could extend both <u>AbortController</u> and <u>AbortSignal</u> objects according to their needs.

✓ MDN

§

```
[Exposed=(Window, Worker)]
interface AbortController {
    constructor();

    [SameObject] readonly attribute AbortSignal signal;

    undefined abort();
};
```

For web developers (non-normative)

```
controller = new AbortController()
```

Returns a new controller whose <u>signal</u> is set to a newly created <u>AbortSignal</u> object.

```
controller . <u>signal</u>
```

Returns the AbortSignal object associated with this object.

```
controller . <u>abort()</u>
```

Invoking this method will set this object's <u>AbortSignal</u>'s <u>aborted flag</u> and signal to any observers that the associated activity is to be aborted.

An AbortController object has an associated signal (an AbortSignal object).



The new AbortController() constructor steps are:

- 1. Let signal be a new AbortSignal object.
- 2. Set this' s signal to signal.

The signal getter steps are to return this' s signal.

The abort () method steps are to signal abort on this' s signal.



3.2. Interface AbortSignal §

```
✓ MDN
```

For web developers (non-normative)

```
signal . aborted
```

Returns true if this AbortController has signaled to abort, and false otherwise.

An AbortSignal object has an associated aborted flag. It is unset unless specified otherwise.

An <u>AbortSignal</u> object has associated **abort algorithms**, which is a <u>set</u> of algorithms which are to be executed when its <u>aborted flag</u> is set. Unless specified otherwise, its value is the empty set.

To add an algorithm to an AbortSignal object signal, run these steps:

- 1. If signal' s <u>aborted flag</u> is set, then return.
- 2. Append algorithm to signal's abort algorithms.

File an issue about the selected text om an AbortSignal signal, remove algorithm from signal's abort algorithms.

Note

The <u>abort algorithms</u> enable APIs with complex requirements to react in a reasonable way to <u>abort ()</u>. For example, a given API' s <u>aborted flag</u> might need to be propagated to a cross-thread environment, such as a service worker.

The aborted getter steps are to return true if this' s aborted flag is set; otherwise false.

The onabort attribute is an <u>event handler IDL attribute</u> for the <u>onabort</u> <u>event handler</u>, whose <u>event handler event type</u> is <u>abort</u>.

Note

Changes to an <u>AbortSignal</u> object represent the wishes of the corresponding <u>AbortController</u> object, but an API observing the <u>AbortSignal</u> object can chose to ignore them. For instance, if the operation has already completed.

To **signal abort**, given a **AbortSignal** object signal, run these steps:

- 1. If signal' s <u>aborted flag</u> is set, then return.
- 2. Set signal' s aborted flag.
- 3. For each algorithm in signal's abort algorithms: run algorithm.
- 4. Empty signal' s abort algorithms.
- 5. Fire an event named abort at signal.

A following Signal (an Abort Signal) is made to follow a parent Signal (an Abort Signal) by running these steps:

- 1. If following Signal's <u>aborted flag</u> is set, then return.
- 2. If parentSignal' s <u>aborted flag</u> is set, then <u>signal abort</u> on followingSignal.
- 3. Otherwise, add the following abort steps to parentSignal:
 - 1. Signal abort on following Signal.

3.3. Using AbortController and AbortSignal objects in APIs §

Any web platform API using promises to represent operations that can be aborted must adhere to the following:

- Accept AbortSignal objects through a signal dictionary member.
- Convey that the operation got aborted by rejecting the promise with an "AbortError" DOMException.
- Reject immediately if the <u>AbortSignal</u>'s <u>aborted flag</u> is already set, otherwise:
- Use the <u>abort algorithms</u> mechanism to observe changes to the <u>AbortSignal</u> object and do so in a manner that does not lead to clashes with other observers.

Example

The steps for a promise-returning method doAmazingness (options) could be as follows:

- 1. Let p be a new promise.
- 2. If options' signal member is present, then:
 - 1. If options' signal' s aborted flag is set, then reject p with an "AbortError" DOMException and return p.
 - 2. Add the following abort steps to options' signal:
 - 1. Stop doing amazing things.
 - 2. Reject p with an "AbortError" DOMException.
- 3. Run these steps in parallel:
 - 1. Let amazing Result be the result of doing some amazing things.

File an issue about the selected text gResult.

4. Return p.

APIs not using promises should still adhere to the above as much as possible.

4. Nodes §

4.1. Introduction to "The DOM" §

In its original sense, "The DOM" is an API for accessing and manipulating documents (in particular, HTML and XML documents). In this specification, the term "document" is used for any markup-based resource, ranging from short static documents to long essays or reports with rich multimedia, as well as to fully-fledged interactive applications.

Each such document is represented as a <u>node tree</u>. Some of the <u>nodes</u> in a <u>tree</u> can have <u>children</u>, while others are always leaves.

To illustrate, consider this HTML document:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html class=e>
<head><title>Aliens?</title></head>
<body>Why yes.</body>
</html>
```

It is represented as follows:

```
L_Doctype: html
L_Element: html class="e"
L_Element: head
L_Element: title
L_Text: Aliens?
L_Element: body
L_Text: Why yes. A
```

Note that, due to the magic that is <u>HTML parsing</u>, not all <u>ASCII whitespace</u> were turned into <u>Text</u> <u>nodes</u>, but the general concept is clear. Markup goes in, a <u>tree</u> of <u>nodes</u> comes out.

Note

The most excellent <u>Live DOM Viewer</u> can be used to explore this matter in more detail.

4.2. Node tree §

<u>Document, DocumentType, DocumentFragment, Element, Text, ProcessingInstruction</u>, and <u>Comment</u> objects (simply called **nodes**) <u>participate</u> in a <u>tree</u>, simply named the **node tree**.

A <u>node tree</u> is constrained as follows, expressed as a relationship between the type of <u>node</u> and its allowed <u>children</u>:

Document

In tree order:

- 1. Zero or more nodes each of which is <u>ProcessingInstruction</u> or <u>Comment</u>.
- 2. Optionally one DocumentType node.
- 3. Zero or more nodes each of which is <u>ProcessingInstruction</u> or Comment.
- 4. Optionally one Element node.

File an issue about the selected text

5. Zero or more nodes each of which is <u>ProcessingInstruction</u> or <u>Comment</u>.

<u>DocumentFragment</u>

Element

Zero or more nodes each of which is <u>Element</u>, <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, or <u>Comment</u>.

 $\underline{\texttt{DocumentType}}$

<u>Text</u>

<u>ProcessingInstruction</u>

Comment

None.

To determine the **length** of a <u>node</u> node, switch on node:

→ <u>DocumentType</u>

Zero.

- <u> Text</u>
- → ProcessingInstruction

Its data's length.

→ Any other node

Its number of children.

A <u>node</u> is considered **empty** if its <u>length</u> is zero.

4.2.1. Document tree §

A **document tree** is a <u>node tree</u> whose <u>root</u> is a <u>document</u>.

The document element of a document is the element whose parent is that document, if it exists, and null otherwise.

Note

Per the <u>node tree</u> constraints, there can be only one such <u>element</u>.

An <u>element</u> is **in a document tree** if its <u>root</u> is a <u>document</u>.

An <u>element</u> is **in a document** if it is <u>in a document tree</u>. Note The term <u>in a document</u> is no longer supposed to be used. It indicates that the standard using it has not been updated to account for <u>shadow trees</u>.

4.2.2. Shadow tree §

A **shadow tree** is a <u>node tree</u> whose <u>root</u> is a <u>shadow root</u>.

A <u>shadow root</u> is always attached to another <u>node tree</u> through its <u>host</u>. A <u>shadow tree</u> is therefore never alone. The <u>node tree</u> of a <u>shadow root</u>' s <u>host</u> is sometimes referred to as the **light tree**.

Note

A <u>shadow tree</u>' s corresponding <u>light tree</u> can be a <u>shadow tree</u> itself.

An <u>element</u> is **connected** if its <u>shadow-including root</u> is a <u>document</u>.

4.2.2.1. Slots §

File an issue about the selected text

A shadow tree contains zero or more elements that are slots.

Note

A <u>slot</u> can only be created through HTML' s <u>slot</u> element.

A <u>slot</u> has an associated **name** (a string). Unless stated otherwise it is the empty string.

Use these <u>attribute change steps</u> to update a <u>slot</u>' s <u>name</u>:

- 1. If element is a <u>slot</u>, localName is name, and namespace is null, then:
 - 1. If value is oldValue, then return.
 - 2. If value is null and oldValue is the empty string, then return.
 - 3. If value is the empty string and oldValue is null, then return.
 - 4. If value is null or the empty string, then set element's name to the empty string.
 - 5. Otherwise, set element's <u>name</u> to value.
 - 6. Run <u>assign slottables for a tree</u> with element's <u>root</u>.

Note

The first <u>slot</u> in a <u>shadow tree</u>, in <u>tree order</u>, whose <u>name</u> is the empty string, is sometimes known as the "default slot".

A <u>slot</u> has an associated **assigned nodes** (a list of <u>slottables</u>). Unless stated otherwise it is empty.

4.2.2.2. Slottables §

Element and **Text nodes** are **slottables**.

Note

A slot can be a slottable.

A <u>slottable</u> has an associated **name** (a string). Unless stated otherwise it is the empty string.

Use these <u>attribute change steps</u> to update a <u>slottable</u>' s <u>name</u>:

- 1. If localName is slot and namespace is null, then:
 - 1. If value is oldValue, then return.
 - 2. If value is null and oldValue is the empty string, then return.
 - 3. If value is the empty string and oldValue is null, then return.
 - 4. If value is null or the empty string, then set element's name to the empty string.
 - 5. Otherwise, set element's <u>name</u> to value.
 - 6. If element is <u>assigned</u>, then run <u>assign slottables</u> for element' s <u>assigned slot</u>.
 - 7. Run <u>assign a slot</u> for element.

A <u>slottable</u> has an associated **assigned slot** (null or a <u>slot</u>). Unless stated otherwise it is null. A <u>slottable</u> is **assigned** if its <u>assigned slot</u> is non-null.

4.2.2.3. Finding slots and slottables §

To find a slot for a given slottable slottable and an optional open flag (unset unless stated otherwise), run these steps:

File an issue about the selected text an return null.

- 2. Let shadow be slottable's parent's shadow root.
- 3. If shadow is null, then return null.
- 4. If the open flag is set and shadow's mode is not "open", then return null.
- 5. Return the first <u>slot</u> in <u>tree order</u> in shadow' s <u>descendants</u> whose <u>name</u> is slottable' s <u>name</u>, if any, and null otherwise.

To **find slottables** for a given <u>slot</u> slot, run these steps:

- 1. Let result be an empty list.
- 2. If slot' s root is not a shadow root, then return result.
- 3. Let host be slot' s <u>root</u>' s <u>host</u>.
- 4. For each slottable child of host, slottable, in tree order:
 - 1. Let foundSlot be the result of <u>finding a slot</u> given slottable.
 - 2. If foundSlot is slot, then append slottable to result.
- 5. Return result.

To **find flattened slottables** for a given <u>slot</u> slot, run these steps:

- 1. Let result be an empty list.
- 2. If slot's root is not a shadow root, then return result.
- 3. Let slottables be the result of <u>finding slottables</u> given slot.
- 4. If slottables is the empty list, then append each slottable child of slot, in tree order, to slottables.
- 5. For each node in slottables:
 - 1. If node is a <u>slot</u> whose <u>root</u> is a <u>shadow root</u>, then:
 - 1. Let temporaryResult be the result of <u>finding flattened slottables</u> given node.
 - 2. Append each slottable in temporaryResult, in order, to result.
 - 2. Otherwise, append node to result.
- 6. Return result.

4.2.2.4. Assigning slottables and slots §

To assign slottables for a slot, run these steps:

- 1. Let slottables be the result of <u>finding slottables</u> for slot.
- 2. If slottables and slot's <u>assigned nodes</u> are not identical, then run <u>signal a slot change</u> for slot.
- 3. Set slot's <u>assigned nodes</u> to slottables.
- 4. For each slottable in slottables, set slottable's assigned slot to slot.

To **assign slottables for a tree**, given a <u>node</u> root, run <u>assign slottables</u> for each <u>slot</u> slot in root' s <u>inclusive descendants</u>, in <u>tree order</u>.

To assign a slot, given a slottable slottable, run these steps:

- 1. Let slot be the result of finding a slot with slottable.
- 2. If slot is non-null, then run assign slottables for slot.

File an issue about the selected text

4.2.2.5. Signaling slot change §

Each similar-origin window agent has signal slots (a set of slots), which is initially empty. [HTML]

To **signal a slot change**, for a **slot** slot, run these steps:

- 1. Append slot to slot' s relevant agent' s signal slots.
- 2. Queue a mutation observer microtask.

4.2.3. Mutation algorithms §

To ensure pre-insertion validity of a node into a parent before a child, run these steps:

- 1. If parent is not a <u>Document</u>, <u>DocumentFragment</u>, or <u>Element</u> <u>node</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. If node is a host-including inclusive ancestor of parent, then throw a "HierarchyRequestError" DOMException.
- 3. If child is non-null and its <u>parent</u> is not parent, then <u>throw</u> a "NotFoundError" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 4. If node is not a <u>DocumentFragment</u>, <u>DocumentType</u>, <u>Element</u>, <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, or <u>Comment node</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 5. If either node is a <u>Text node</u> and parent is a <u>document</u>, or node is a <u>doctype</u> and parent is not a <u>document</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 6. If parent is a <u>document</u>, and any of the statements below, switched on node, are true, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.

If node has more than one element child or has a Text node child.

Otherwise, if node has one <u>element child</u> and either parent has an <u>element child</u>, child is a <u>doctype</u>, or child is non-null and a <u>doctype</u> is <u>following</u> child.

<u>element</u>

parent has an element child, child is a doctype, or child is non-null and a doctype is following child.

parent has a <u>doctype child</u>, child is non-null and an <u>element</u> is <u>preceding</u> child, or child is null and parent has an <u>element child</u>.

To **pre-insert** a node into a parent before a child, run these steps:

- 1. Ensure pre-insertion validity of node into parent before child.
- 2. Let referenceChild be child.
- 3. If referenceChild is node, then set referenceChild to node' s next sibling.
- 4. Insert node into parent before referenceChild.
- 5. Return node.

<u>Specifications</u> may define **insertion steps** for all or some <u>nodes</u>. The algorithm is passed insertedNode, as indicated in the <u>insert</u> algorithm below.

<u>Specifications</u> may define **children changed steps** for all or some <u>nodes</u>. The algorithm is passed no argument and is called from <u>insert</u>, <u>remove</u>, and <u>replace data</u>.

To insert a node into a parent before a child, with an optional suppress observers flag, run these steps:

- 1. Let nodes be node' s children, if node is a DocumentFragment node; otherwise « node ».
- 2 Let count he nodes' s size

File an issue about the selected text

- 3. If count is 0, then return.
- 4. If node is a <u>DocumentFragment</u> <u>node</u>, then:
 - 1. Remove its children with the suppress observers flag set.
 - 2. Queue a tree mutation record for node with « », nodes, null, and null.

Note

This step intentionally does not pay attention to the suppress observers flag.

- 5. If child is non-null, then:
 - 1. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>start node</u> is parent and <u>start offset</u> is greater than child' s <u>index</u>, increase its <u>start</u> <u>offset</u> by count.
 - 2. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>end node</u> is parent and <u>end offset</u> is greater than child' s <u>index</u>, increase its <u>end</u> <u>offset</u> by count.
- 6. Let previousSibling be child' s previous sibling or parent' s last child if child is null.
- 7. For each node in nodes, in tree order:
 - 1. Adopt node into parent's node document.
 - 2. If child is null, then <u>append</u> node to parent' s <u>children</u>.
 - 3. Otherwise, insert node into parent's children before child's index.
 - 4. If parent is a <u>shadow host</u> and node is a <u>slottable</u>, then <u>assign a slot</u> for node.
 - 5. If parent' s <u>root</u> is a <u>shadow root</u>, and parent is a <u>slot</u> whose <u>assigned nodes</u> is the empty list, then run <u>signal a slot change</u> for parent.
 - 6. Run assign slottables for a tree with node's root.
 - 7. For each <u>shadow-including inclusive descendant</u> inclusiveDescendant of node, in <u>shadow-including tree</u> <u>order</u>:
 - 1. Run the insertion steps with inclusiveDescendant.
 - 2. If inclusiveDescendant is <u>connected</u>, then:
 - 1. If inclusiveDescendant is <u>custom</u>, then <u>enqueue a custom element callback reaction</u> with inclusiveDescendant, callback name "connectedCallback", and an empty argument list.
 - 2. Otherwise, <u>try to upgrade</u> inclusiveDescendant.

Note

If this successfully upgrades inclusiveDescendant, its connectedCallback will be enqueued automatically during the <u>upgrade an element</u> algorithm.

- 8. If suppress observers flag is unset, then <u>queue a tree mutation record</u> for parent with nodes, « », previousSibling, and child.
- 9. Run the children changed steps for parent.

To **append** a node to a parent, <u>pre-insert</u> node into parent before null.

To **replace** a child with node within a parent, run these steps:

- 1. If parent is not a <u>Document</u>, <u>DocumentFragment</u>, or <u>Element</u> <u>node</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. If node is a host-including inclusive ancestor of parent, then throw a "HierarchyRequestError" DOMException.
- 3. If child's parent is not parent, then throw a "NotFoundError" DOMException.
- 4. If node is not a <u>DocumentFragment</u>, <u>DocumentType</u>, <u>Element</u>, <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, or <u>Comment node</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.

File an issue about the selected text

- 5. If either node is a <u>Text node</u> and parent is a <u>document</u>, or node is a <u>doctype</u> and parent is not a <u>document</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 6. If parent is a <u>document</u>, and any of the statements below, switched on node, are true, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
 - → <u>DocumentFragment</u> <u>node</u>

If node has more than one element child or has a Text node child.

Otherwise, if node has one <u>element child</u> and either parent has an <u>element child</u> that is not child or a <u>doctype</u> is <u>following</u> child.

parent has an element child that is not child or a doctype is following child.

parent has a doctype child that is not child, or an element is preceding child.

Note

The above statements differ from the pre-insert algorithm.

- 7. Let referenceChild be child' s next sibling.
- 8. If referenceChild is node, then set referenceChild to node' s next sibling.
- 9. Let previousSibling be child's previous sibling.
- 10. Let removedNodes be the empty set.
- 11. If child's parent is non-null, then:
 - 1. Set removedNodes to « child ».
 - 2. Remove child with the suppress observers flag set.

Note

The above can only be false if child is node.

- 12. Let nodes be node' s children if node is a DocumentFragment node; otherwise « node ».
- 13. Insert node into parent before referenceChild with the suppress observers flag set.
- 14. Queue a tree mutation record for parent with nodes, removedNodes, previousSibling, and referenceChild.
- 15. Return child.

To replace all with a node within a parent, run these steps:

- 1. Let removedNodes be parent' s children.
- 2. Let addedNodes be the empty set.
- 3. If node is a <u>DocumentFragment</u> <u>node</u>, then set addedNodes to node' s <u>children</u>.
- 4. Otherwise, if node is non-null, set addedNodes to « node ».
- 5. Remove all parent' s children, in tree order, with the suppress observers flag set.
- 6. If node is non-null, then insert node into parent before null with the suppress observers flag set.
- 7. If either addedNodes or removedNodes <u>is not empty</u>, then <u>queue a tree mutation record</u> for parent with addedNodes, removedNodes, null, and null.

Note

This algorithm does not make any checks with regards to the <u>node tree</u> constraints. Specification authors need to use it wisely.

File an issue about the selected text run these steps:

- 1. If child's parent is not parent, then throw a "NotFoundError" DOMException.
- 2. Remove child.
- 3. Return child.

<u>Specifications</u> may define **removing steps** for all or some <u>nodes</u>. The algorithm is passed removedNode, and optionally oldParent, as indicated in the <u>remove</u> algorithm below.

To **remove** a node, with an optional suppress observers flag, run these steps:

- 1. Let parent be node' s parent
- 2. Assert: parent is non-null.
- 3. Let index be node' s index.
- 4. For each live range whose start node is an inclusive descendant of node, set its start to (parent, index).
- 5. For each live range whose end node is an inclusive descendant of node, set its end to (parent, index).
- 6. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>start node</u> is parent and <u>start offset</u> is greater than index, decrease its <u>start offset</u> by 1.
- 7. For each live range whose end node is parent and end offset is greater than index, decrease its end offset by 1.
- 8. For each <u>NodeIterator</u> object iterator whose <u>root</u>' s <u>node document</u> is node' s <u>node document</u>, run the <u>NodeIterator pre-removing steps</u> given node and iterator.
- 9. Let oldPreviousSibling be node's previous sibling.
- 10. Let oldNextSibling be node' s next sibling.
- 11. Remove node from its parent' s children.
- 12. If node is <u>assigned</u>, then run <u>assign slottables</u> for node' s <u>assigned slot</u>.
- 13. If parent' s <u>root</u> is a <u>shadow root</u>, and parent is a <u>slot</u> whose <u>assigned nodes</u> is the empty list, then run <u>signal a slot</u> <u>change</u> for parent.
- 14. If node has an inclusive descendant that is a slot, then:
 - 1. Run assign slottables for a tree with parent's root.
 - 2. Run <u>assign slottables for a tree</u> with node.
- 15. Run the <u>removing steps</u> with node and parent.
- 16. Let isParentConnected be parent's connected.
- 17. If node is <u>custom</u> and isParentConnected is true, then <u>enqueue a custom element callback reaction</u> with node, callback name "disconnectedCallback", and an empty argument list.

Note

It is intentional for now that <u>custom elements</u> do not get parent passed. This might change in the future if there is a need.

- 18. For each <u>shadow-including descendant</u> descendant of node, in <u>shadow-including tree order</u>, then:
 - 1. Run the <u>removing steps</u> with descendant.
 - 2. If descendant is <u>custom</u> and isParentConnected is true, then <u>enqueue a custom element callback reaction</u> with descendant, callback name "disconnectedCallback", and an empty argument list.
- 19. For each <u>inclusive ancestor</u> inclusiveAncestor of parent, and then <u>for each</u> registered of inclusiveAncestor's <u>registered observer list</u>, if registered's <u>options</u>'s <u>subtree</u> is true, then <u>append</u> a new <u>transient registered observer</u> whose <u>observer</u> is registered's <u>options</u> is registered's <u>options</u>, and <u>source</u> is registered to node's <u>registered observer list</u>.
- 20. If suppress observers flag is unset, then <u>queue a tree mutation record</u> for parent with « », « node », addPreviousCibling, and addNevtSibling.

File an issue about the selected text

21. Run the children changed steps for parent.

4.2.4. Mixin NonElementParentNode §

Note

Web compatibility prevents the <u>getElementById()</u> method from being exposed on <u>elements</u> (and therefore on <u>ParentNode</u>).

```
interface mixin NonElementParentNode {
    Element? getElementById(DOMString elementId);
};
Document includes NonElementParentNode;
DocumentFragment includes NonElementParentNode;
```

For web developers (non-normative)

```
node . getElementById(elementId)
```

Returns the first <u>element</u> within node' s <u>descendants</u> whose <u>ID</u> is elementId.

The getElementById (elementId) method, when invoked, must return the first <u>element</u>, in <u>tree order</u>, within <u>this</u>'s <u>descendants</u>, whose <u>ID</u> is elementId, and null if there is no such <u>element</u> otherwise.

4.2.5. Mixin <u>DocumentOrShadowRoot</u> §

```
✓ MDN
```

```
interface mixin DocumentOrShadowRoot {
L };

Document includes DocumentOrShadowRoot;
ShadowRoot includes DocumentOrShadowRoot;
```

Note

The <u>DocumentOrShadowRoot</u> mixin is expected to be used by other standards that want to define APIs shared between <u>documents</u> and <u>shadow roots</u>.

4.2.6. Mixin ParentNode §

To convert nodes into a node, given nodes and document, run these steps:

- 1. Let node be null.
- 2. Replace each string in nodes with a new <u>Text node</u> whose <u>data</u> is the string and <u>node document</u> is document.
- 3. If nodes contains one <u>node</u>, set node to that <u>node</u>.
- 4. Otherwise, set node to a new <u>DocumentFragment</u> whose <u>node document</u> is document, and then <u>append</u> each <u>node</u> in nodes, if any, to it.
- 5. Return node.

```
ID interface mixin ParentNode {

[SameObject] readonly attribute HTMLCollection children;

readonly attribute Element? firstElementChild;

File an issue about the selected text
```

```
readonly attribute <u>unsigned long</u> <u>childElementCount</u>;
       [CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined prepend((Node or DOMString)... nodes);
       [CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined append((Node or DOMString)... nodes);
       [CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined replaceChildren((Node or DOMString)... nodes);
       Element? querySelector (DOMString selectors);
       [NewObject] NodeList querySelectorAll(DOMString selectors);
    <u>Document</u> includes <u>ParentNode</u>;
    <u>DocumentFragment</u> includes <u>ParentNode</u>;
     Element includes ParentNode;
For web developers (non-normative)
  collection = node . children
     Returns the child elements.
  element = node . firstElementChild
     Returns the first child that is an element, and null otherwise.
 element = node . lastElementChild
     Returns the last child that is an element, and null otherwise.
 node . prepend(nodes)
    Inserts nodes before the <u>first child</u> of node, while replacing strings in nodes with equivalent <u>Text</u> <u>nodes</u>.
    <u>Throws</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u> if the constraints of the <u>node tree</u> are violated.
 node . append(nodes)
    Inserts nodes after the <u>last child</u> of node, while replacing strings in nodes with equivalent <u>Text nodes</u>.
    Throws a "HierarchyRequestError" DOMException if the constraints of the node tree are violated.
  node . replaceChildren (nodes)
     Replace all children of node with nodes, while replacing strings in nodes with equivalent Text nodes.
    Throws a "HierarchyRequestError" DOMException if the constraints of the node tree are violated.
 node . <u>querySelector</u>(selectors)
     Returns the first <u>element</u> that is a <u>descendant</u> of node that matches selectors.
 node . <u>querySelectorAll</u>(selectors)
     Returns all element descendants of node that match selectors.
The children attribute' s getter must return an <a href="https://example.collection"><u>HTMLCollection</u></a> collection rooted at <a href="mailto:children">this matching only element children</a>.
The firstElementChild attribute's getter must return the first child that is an element, and null otherwise.
The lastElementChild attribute's getter must return the last child that is an element, and null otherwise.
The childElementCount attribute' s getter must return the number of children of this that are elements.
The prepend (nodes) method, when invoked, must run these steps:
    1. Let node be the result of converting nodes into a node given nodes and this' s node document.
    2. Pre-insert node into this before this' s first child.
The append (nodes) method, when invoked, must run these steps:
```

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org

36/146

1. Let node be the result of converting nodes into a node given nodes and this' s node document.

File an issue about the selected text

The replaceChildren (nodes) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. Let node be the result of converting nodes into a node given nodes and this' s node document.
- 2. Ensure pre-insertion validity of node into this before null.
- 3. Replace all with node within this.

The querySelector (selectors) method, when invoked, must return the first result of running <u>scope-match a selectors</u> <u>string</u> selectors against <u>this</u>, if the result is not an empty list, and null otherwise.

The querySelectorAll(selectors) method, when invoked, must return the <u>static</u> result of running <u>scope-match a selectors string</u> selectors against <u>this</u>.

4.2.7. Mixin NonDocumentTypeChildNode §



Note

Web compatibility prevents the <u>previousElementSibling</u> and <u>nextElementSibling</u> attributes from being exposed on <u>doctypes</u> (and therefore on <u>ChildNode</u>).

```
interface mixin NonDocumentTypeChildNode {
    readonly attribute Element? previousElementSibling;
    readonly attribute Element? nextElementSibling;
};

Element includes NonDocumentTypeChildNode;
CharacterData includes NonDocumentTypeChildNode;
```

For web developers (non-normative)

```
element = node . previousElementSibling
```

Returns the first preceding sibling that is an element, and null otherwise.

```
element = node . nextElementSibling
```

Returns the first following sibling that is an element, and null otherwise.

The <u>previousElementSibling</u> attribute's getter must return the first <u>preceding sibling</u> that is an <u>element</u>, and null otherwise.

The nextElementSibling attribute's getter must return the first following sibling that is an element, and null otherwise.

4.2.8. Mixin ChildNode §

```
✓ MDN
```

```
interface mixin ChildNode {

[CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined before((Node or DOMString)... nodes);

[CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined after((Node or DOMString)... nodes);

[CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined replaceWith((Node or DOMString)... nodes);

[CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined remove();

];

DocumentType includes ChildNode;

Element includes ChildNode;

CharacterData includes ChildNode;
```

For web developers (non-normative)

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 37/146

Inserts nodes just before node, while replacing strings in nodes with equivalent Text nodes.

Throws a "HierarchyRequestError" DOMException if the constraints of the node tree are violated.

node . <u>after(...nodes)</u>

Inserts nodes just after node, while replacing strings in nodes with equivalent Text nodes.

<u>Throws</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u> if the constraints of the <u>node tree</u> are violated.

node . replaceWith(...nodes)

Replaces node with nodes, while replacing strings in nodes with equivalent Text nodes.

Throws a "HierarchyRequestError" DOMException if the constraints of the node tree are violated.

node . remove()

Removes node.

The before (nodes) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. Let parent be this' s parent.
- 2. If parent is null, then return.
- 3. Let viablePreviousSibling be this' s first preceding sibling not in nodes, and null otherwise.
- 4. Let node be the result of converting nodes into a node, given nodes and this' s node document.
- 5. If viablePreviousSibling is null, set it to parent' s first child, and to viablePreviousSibling' s next sibling otherwise.
- 6. Pre-insert node into parent before viablePreviousSibling.

The after (nodes) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. Let parent be this' s parent.
- 2. If parent is null, then return.
- 3. Let viableNextSibling be this' s first following sibling not in nodes, and null otherwise.
- 4. Let node be the result of converting nodes into a node, given nodes and this' s node document.
- 5. Pre-insert node into parent before viableNextSibling.

The replaceWith (nodes) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. Let parent be this' s parent.
- 2. If parent is null, then return.
- 3. Let viableNextSibling be this' s first following sibling not in nodes, and null otherwise.
- 4. Let node be the result of converting nodes into a node, given nodes and this' s node document.
- 5. If this' s parent is parent, replace this with node within parent.

Note

This could have been inserted into node.

6. Otherwise, pre-insert node into parent before viableNextSibling.

The remove () method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. If this' s parent is null, then return.
- 2. Remove this.

4.2.9. Mixin Slottable §

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 38/146

```
interface mixin Slottable {
    readonly attribute HTMLSlotElement? assignedSlot;
};
Element includes Slottable;
Text includes Slottable;
```

The assignedSlot attribute's getter must return the result of find a slot given this and with the open flag set.

```
✓ MDN
```

4.2.10. Old-style collections: NodeList and HTMLCollection §

A **collection** is an object that represents a list of <u>nodes</u>. A <u>collection</u> can be either **live** or **static**. Unless otherwise stated, a <u>collection</u> must be <u>live</u>.

If a <u>collection</u> is <u>live</u>, then the attributes and methods on that object must operate on the actual underlying data, not a snapshot of the data.

When a collection is created, a filter and a root are associated with it.

The <u>collection</u> then **represents** a view of the subtree rooted at the <u>collection's</u> root, containing only nodes that match the given filter. The view is linear. In the absence of specific requirements to the contrary, the nodes within the <u>collection</u> must be sorted in <u>tree order</u>.

4.2.10.1. Interface NodeList §

A <u>NodeList</u> object is a <u>collection</u> of <u>nodes</u>.

```
✓ MDN
```

```
ID [Exposed=Window]
L interface NodeList {
    getter Node? item(unsigned long index);
    readonly attribute unsigned long length;
    iterable<Node>;
};
```

For web developers (non-normative)

collection . length

Returns the number of <u>nodes</u> in the <u>collection</u>.

element = collection .item(index)

element = collection[index]

Returns the <u>node</u> with index index from the <u>collection</u>. The <u>nodes</u> are sorted in <u>tree order</u>.

The object' s <u>supported property indices</u> are the numbers in the range zero to one less than the number of nodes <u>represented by the collection</u>. If there are no such elements, then there are no <u>supported property indices</u>.

The length attribute must return the number of nodes represented by the collection.

The item(index) method must return the indexth node in the collection. If there is no indexth node in the collection, then the method must return null.

4.2.10.2. Interface HTMLCollection §



```
ID [<u>Exposed</u>=Window, <u>LegacyUnenumerableNamedProperties</u>]
```

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 39/146

```
readonly attribute unsigned long length;
getter Element? item(unsigned long index);
getter Element? namedItem(DOMString name);
};
```

An <u>HTMLCollection</u> object is a <u>collection</u> of <u>elements</u>.

Note

<u>HTMLCollection</u> is a historical artifact we cannot rid the web of. While developers are of course welcome to keep using it, new API standard designers ought not to use it (use sequence<T> in IDL instead).

For web developers (non-normative)

```
collection . \underline{1ength}
```

Returns the number of elements in the collection.

element = collection .item(index)

element = collection[index]

Returns the <u>element</u> with index index from the <u>collection</u>. The <u>elements</u> are sorted in <u>tree order</u>.

element = collection . namedItem(name)

element = collection[name]

Returns the first <u>element</u> with <u>ID</u> or name name from the collection.

The object' s <u>supported property indices</u> are the numbers in the range zero to one less than the number of elements <u>represented by the collection</u>. If there are no such elements, then there are no <u>supported property indices</u>.

The length attribute' s getter must return the number of nodes represented by the collection.

The item(index) method, when invoked, must return the indexth element in the collection. If there is no indexth element in the collection, then the method must return null.

The <u>supported property names</u> are the values from the list returned by these steps:

- 1. Let result be an empty list.
- 2. For each element represented by the collection, in tree order:
 - 1. If element has an <u>ID</u> which is not in result, append element' s <u>ID</u> to result.
 - 2. If element is in the <u>HTML namespace</u> and <u>has</u> a <u>name attribute</u> whose <u>value</u> is neither the empty string nor is in result, append element' s <u>name attribute</u> value to result.
- 3. Return result.

The namedItem(key) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If key is the empty string, return null.
- 2. Return the first <u>element</u> in the <u>collection</u> for which at least one of the following is true:
 - o it has an ID which is key;
 - it is in the HTML namespace and has a name attribute whose value is key;

or null if there is no such element.

4.3. Mutation observers §



Each similar-origin window agent has a mutation observer microtask queued (a boolean), which is initially false. [HTML]

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 40/146

Each <u>similar-origin window agent</u> also has **mutation observers** (a <u>set</u> of zero or more <u>MutationObserver</u> objects), which is initially empty.

To queue a mutation observer microtask, run these steps:

- 1. If the <u>surrounding agent</u>' s <u>mutation observer microtask queued</u> is true, then return.
- 2. Set the <u>surrounding agent</u>' s <u>mutation observer microtask queued</u> to true.
- 3. Queue a microtask to notify mutation observers.

To **notify mutation observers**, run these steps:

- 1. Set the <u>surrounding agent</u>' s <u>mutation observer microtask queued</u> to false.
- 2. Let notifySet be a <u>clone</u> of the <u>surrounding agent</u>' s <u>mutation observers</u>.
- 3. Let signalSet be a <u>clone</u> of the <u>surrounding agent</u>' s <u>signal slots</u>.
- 4. Empty the surrounding agent's signal slots.
- 5. For each mo of notifySet:
 - 1. Let records be a <u>clone</u> of mo' s <u>record queue</u>.
 - 2. Empty mo's record queue.
 - 3. <u>For each node of mo's node list, remove</u> all <u>transient registered observers</u> whose <u>observer</u> is mo from node's <u>registered observer list</u>.
 - 4. If records is not empty, then invoke mo's callback with « records, mo », and mo. If this throws an exception, then report the exception.
- 6. For each slot of signalSet, fire an event named slotchange, with its bubbles attribute set to true, at slot.

Each <u>node</u> has a **registered observer list** (a <u>list</u> of zero or more <u>registered observers</u>), which is initially empty.

A registered observer consists of an observer (a MutationObserver object) and options (a MutationObserverInit dictionary).

A transient registered observer is a registered observer that also consists of a source (a registered observer).

Note

<u>Transient registered observers</u> are used to track mutations within a given <u>node</u>' s <u>descendants</u> after <u>node</u> has been removed so they do not get lost when <u>subtree</u> is set to true on <u>node</u>' s <u>parent</u>.

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 41/146

```
boolean childList = false;
boolean attributes;
boolean characterData;
boolean subtree = false;
boolean attributeOldValue;
boolean characterDataOldValue;
sequence<DOMString> attributeFilter;
};
```

A <u>MutationObserver</u> object can be used to observe mutations to the <u>tree</u> of <u>nodes</u>.

Each <u>MutationObserver</u> object has these associated concepts:

- A callback set on creation.
- A **node list** (a <u>list</u> of <u>nodes</u>), which is initially empty.
- A record queue (a queue of zero or more MutationRecord objects), which is initially empty.

For web developers (non-normative)

```
observer = new <u>MutationObserver(callback)</u>
```

Constructs a <u>MutationObserver</u> object and sets its <u>callback</u> to callback. The callback is invoked with a list of <u>MutationRecord</u> objects as first argument and the constructed <u>MutationObserver</u> object as second argument. It is invoked after <u>nodes</u> registered with the <u>observe()</u> method, are mutated.

```
observer . <a href="mailto:observe">observe</a> (target, options)
```

Instructs the user agent to observe a given target (a <u>node</u>) and report any mutations based on the criteria given by options (an object).

The options argument allows for setting mutation observation options via object members. These are the object members that can be used:

childList

Set to true if mutations to target' s children are to be observed.

<u>attributes</u>

Set to true if mutations to target's <u>attributes</u> are to be observed. Can be omitted if <u>attributeOldValue</u> or <u>attributeFilter</u> is specified.

characterData

Set to true if mutations to target's data are to be observed. Can be omitted if characterData01dValue is specified.

subtree

Set to true if mutations to not just target, but also target's descendants are to be observed.

attributeOldValue

Set to true if <u>attributes</u> is true or omitted and target's <u>attribute</u> before the mutation needs to be recorded.

<u>characterDataOldValue</u>

Set to true if characterData is set to true or omitted and target' s data before the mutation needs to be recorded.

$\underline{attributeFilter}$

Set to a list of <u>attribute local names</u> (without <u>namespace</u>) if not all <u>attribute</u> mutations need to be observed and <u>attributes</u> is true or omitted.

```
observer . <a href="mailto:disconnect()">disconnect()</a>
```

Stops observer from observing any mutations. Until the <u>observe()</u> method is used again, observer's <u>callback</u> will not be invoked.

```
observer . <a href="takeRecords">takeRecords()</a>
```

Empties the <u>record queue</u> and returns what was in there.

The MutationObserver (callback) constructor, when invoked, must run these steps:



1. Let mo be a new MutationObserver object whose callback is callback.

File an issue about the selected text agent's mutation observers.

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 42/146

3. Return mo.

The observe (target, options) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. If either options' s <u>attributeOldValue</u> or <u>attributeFilter</u> is present and options' s <u>attributes</u> is omitted, then set options' s <u>attributes</u> to true.
- 2. If options' s characterData01dValue is present and options' s characterData is omitted, then set options' s characterData to true.
- 3. If none of options' s childList, attributes, and characterData is true, then throw a TypeError.
- 4. If options' s <u>attributeOldValue</u> is true and options' s <u>attributes</u> is false, then <u>throw</u> a TypeError.
- 5. If options' s attributeFilter is present and options' s attributes is false, then throw a TypeError.
- 6. If options' s characterData01dValue is true and options' s <a hr
- 7. For each registered of target' s registered observer list, if registered' s observer is this:
 - 1. <u>For each node of this'</u> s <u>node list</u>, <u>remove</u> all <u>transient registered observers</u> whose <u>source</u> is registered from node' s <u>registered observer list</u>.
 - 2. Set registered's options to options.
- 8. Otherwise:
 - 1. <u>Append</u> a new <u>registered observer</u> whose <u>observer</u> is <u>this</u> and <u>options</u> is options to target' s <u>registered</u> <u>observer list</u>.
 - 2. Append target to this' s node list.

The disconnect () method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. <u>For each node of this</u>'s <u>node list</u>, <u>remove</u> any <u>registered observer</u> from node's <u>registered observer list</u> for which <u>this</u> is the <u>observer</u>.
- 2. Empty this' s record queue.

The takeRecords () method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. Let records be a clone of this' s record queue.
- 2. Empty this' s record queue.
- 3. Return records.

4.3.2. Queuing a mutation record §

To **queue a mutation record** of type for target with name, namespace, oldValue, addedNodes, removedNodes, previousSibling, and nextSibling, run these steps:

- 1. Let interestedObservers be an empty map.
- 2. Let nodes be the <u>inclusive ancestors</u> of target.
- 3. For each node in nodes, and then for each registered of node' s registered observer list:
 - 1. Let options be registered' s options.
 - 2. If none of the following are true
 - node is not target and options' s <u>subtree</u> is false
 - type is "attributes" and options' s attributes is not true
 - type is "attributes", options' s <u>attributeFilter</u> is present, and options' s <u>attributeFilter</u> does not contain name or namespace is non-null
 - type is "characterData" and options' s characterData is not true
 - " and options' s <u>childList</u> is false

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 43/146

then:

- 1. Let mo be registered' s observer.
- 2. If interestedObservers[mo] does not exist, then set interestedObservers[mo] to null.
- 3. If either type is "attributes" and options' s <u>attributeOldValue</u> is true, or type is "characterData" and options' s <u>characterDataOldValue</u> is true, then <u>set</u> interestedObservers[mo] to oldValue.
- 4. For each observer → mappedOldValue of interestedObservers:
 - 1. Let record be a new MutationRecord object with its type, set to target, attributeNamespace, attributeNamespace, set to namespace, adValue, addedNodes set to namespace, adValue, addedNodes set to removedNodes, previousSibling, set to previousSibling, and nextSibling, set to nextSibling.
 - 2. Enqueue record to observer's record queue.
- 5. Queue a mutation observer microtask.

To **queue a tree mutation record** for target with addedNodes, removedNodes, previousSibling, and nextSibling, run these steps:

- 1. Assert: either addedNodes or removedNodes is not empty.
- 2. <u>Queue a mutation record</u> of "childList" for target with null, null, null, addedNodes, removedNodes, previousSibling, and nextSibling.

4.3.3. Interface <u>MutationRecord</u> §

```
✓ MDN
```

```
ID [Exposed=Window]
interface MutationRecord {
    readonly attribute DOMString type;
    [SameObject] readonly attribute Node target;
    [SameObject] readonly attribute NodeList addedNodes;
    [SameObject] readonly attribute NodeList removedNodes;
    readonly attribute Node? previousSibling;
    readonly attribute Node? nextSibling;
    readonly attribute DOMString? attributeName;
    readonly attribute DOMString? attributeNamespace;
    readonly attribute DOMString? oldValue;
};
```

For web developers (non-normative)

```
record . <u>type</u>
```

Returns "attributes" if it was an <u>attribute</u> mutation. "characterData" if it was a mutation to a <u>CharacterData node</u>. And "childList" if it was a mutation to the <u>tree</u> of <u>nodes</u>.

```
record . <u>target</u>
```

Returns the <u>node</u> the mutation affected, depending on the <u>type</u>. For "attributes", it is the <u>element</u> whose <u>attribute</u> changed. For "characterData", it is the <u>CharacterData</u> <u>node</u>. For "childList", it is the <u>node</u> whose <u>children</u> changed.

```
\begin{array}{c} \text{record .} & \underline{\text{addedNodes}} \\ \text{record .} & \underline{\text{removedNodes}} \end{array}
```

Return the <u>nodes</u> added and removed respectively.

```
record . <u>previousSibling</u>
record . <u>nextSibling</u>
```

File an issue about the selected text ing respectively of the added or removed nodes, and null otherwise.

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 44/146

```
record . <u>attributeName</u>
```

Returns the <u>local name</u> of the changed <u>attribute</u>, and null otherwise.

```
record . <u>attributeNamespace</u>
```

Returns the <u>namespace</u> of the changed <u>attribute</u>, and null otherwise.

```
record . oldValue
```

The return value depends on <u>type</u>. For "attributes", it is the <u>value</u> of the changed <u>attribute</u> before the change. For "characterData", it is the <u>data</u> of the changed <u>node</u> before the change. For "childList", it is null.

The type, target, addedNodes, removedNodes, previousSibling, nextSibling, attributeName, attributeNamespace, and oldValue attributes must return the values they were initialized to.

4.3.4. Garbage collection §

Nodes have a strong reference to registered observers in their registered observer list.

Registered observers in a node' s registered observer list have a weak reference to the node.

4.4. Interface Node §



```
ID
    [Exposed=Window]
     interface Node : EventTarget {
       const unsigned short ELEMENT NODE = 1;
       const unsigned short ATTRIBUTE NODE = 2;
       const unsigned short TEXT NODE = 3;
       const unsigned short CDATA SECTION NODE = 4;
       const unsigned short ENTITY_REFERENCE_NODE = 5; // historical
       const unsigned short ENTITY_NODE = 6; // historical
       const unsigned short PROCESSING INSTRUCTION NODE = 7;
       const unsigned short COMMENT NODE = 8;
       const unsigned short DOCUMENT NODE = 9;
       const unsigned short DOCUMENT TYPE NODE = 10;
       const unsigned short DOCUMENT FRAGMENT NODE = 11;
       const unsigned short NOTATION_NODE = 12; // historical
       readonly attribute unsigned short nodeType;
       readonly attribute DOMString nodeName;
       readonly attribute <u>USVString baseURI</u>;
       readonly attribute boolean isConnected;
       readonly attribute <a href="Document">Document</a>? <a href="ownerDocument">ownerDocument</a>;
       Node getRootNode(optional GetRootNodeOptions options = {});
       readonly attribute Node? parentNode;
       readonly attribute <a>Element</a>? <a>parentElement</a>;</a>
       boolean hasChildNodes();
       [SameObject] readonly attribute NodeList childNodes;
       readonly attribute Node? firstChild;
       readonly attribute Node? lastChild;
```

File an issue about the selected text ousSibling;

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 45/146

```
readonly attribute <a href="Node">Node</a>? <a href="nextSibling">nextSibling</a>;
  [CEReactions] attribute DOMString? nodeValue;
  [CEReactions] attribute DOMString? textContent;
  [CEReactions] undefined normalize();
  [CEReactions, NewObject] Node cloneNode (optional boolean deep = false);
  boolean isEqualNode(Node? otherNode);
  boolean isSameNode (Node? otherNode); // historical alias of ===
  const unsigned short DOCUMENT POSITION DISCONNECTED = 0x01;
  const unsigned short DOCUMENT POSITION PRECEDING = 0x02;
  const unsigned short DOCUMENT POSITION FOLLOWING = 0x04;
  const unsigned short DOCUMENT POSITION CONTAINS = 0x08;
  const <u>unsigned short</u> <u>DOCUMENT POSITION CONTAINED BY</u> = 0x10;
  const <u>unsigned short</u> <u>DOCUMENT POSITION IMPLEMENTATION SPECIFIC</u> = 0x20;
  unsigned short compareDocumentPosition(Node other);
 boolean contains (Node? other);
  DOMString? lookupPrefix(DOMString? namespace);
 DOMString? lookupNamespaceURI(DOMString? prefix);
 boolean isDefaultNamespace(DOMString? namespace);
  [CEReactions] Node insertBefore (Node node, Node? child);
  [CEReactions] Node appendChild(Node node);
  [CEReactions] Node replaceChild(Node node, Node child);
  [CEReactions] Node removeChild(Node child);
};
dictionary GetRootNodeOptions {
 boolean composed = false;
};
```

Note

Node is an abstract interface and does not exist as <u>node</u>. It is used by all <u>nodes</u> (<u>Document</u>, <u>DocumentType</u>, <u>DocumentFragment</u>, <u>Element</u>, <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, and <u>Comment</u>).

Each <u>node</u> has an associated **node document**, set upon creation, that is a <u>document</u>.

Note

A <u>node</u>' s <u>node document</u> can be changed by the <u>adopt</u> algorithm.

A <u>node</u>' s <u>get the parent</u> algorithm, given an event, returns the <u>node</u>' s <u>assigned slot</u>, if <u>node</u> is <u>assigned</u>, and <u>node</u>' s <u>parent</u> otherwise.

Note

Each <u>node</u> also has a <u>registered observer list</u>.

For web developers (non-normative)

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 46/146

```
Returns the type of node, represented by a number from the following list:
    Node . ELEMENT NODE (1)
       node is an element.
    Node . TEXT NODE (3)
       node is a Text node.
    Node . CDATA SECTION NODE (4)
       node is a CDATASection node.
    Node . PROCESSING INSTRUCTION NODE (7)
       node is a Processing Instruction node.
    Node . COMMENT NODE (8)
       node is a Comment node.
    Node . DOCUMENT NODE (9)
       node is a document.
    Node . DOCUMENT TYPE NODE (10)
       node is a doctype.
    Node . DOCUMENT FRAGMENT NODE (11)
       node is a <u>DocumentFragment</u> node.
 node . <u>nodeName</u>
    Returns a string appropriate for the type of node, as follows:
       Its HTML-uppercased qualified name.
    <u>Attr</u>
       Its qualified name.
       "#text".
    <u>CDATASection</u>
       "#cdata-section".
    <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>
       Its <u>target</u>.
    Comment
       "#comment".
    Document
       "#document".
    <u>DocumentType</u>
       Its name.
    <u>DocumentFragment</u>
       "#document-fragment".
The nodeType attribute' s getter, when invoked, must return the first matching statement, switching on this:

<u> Element</u>

      ELEMENT_NODE (1)

    <u>Attr</u>

      ATTRIBUTE_NODE (2);

    Text

      TEXT_NODE (3);
 CDATA_SECTION_NODE (4);
 → <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>
      PROCESSING_INSTRUCTION_NODE (7);
```

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 47/146

```
    <u>Document</u>

      DOCUMENT_NODE (9);

→ <u>DocumentType</u>

      DOCUMENT_TYPE_NODE (10);

→ <u>DocumentFragment</u>

      DOCUMENT_FRAGMENT_NODE (11).
The nodeName attribute' s getter, when invoked, must return the first matching statement, switching on this:

    <u>Element</u>

      Its HTML-uppercased qualified name.
 Its qualified name.

    Text

      "#text".
 "#cdata-section".
 → <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>
      Its target.
 "#comment".

→ <u>Document</u>

      "#document".

<u> DocumentType</u>

      Its name.

    → <u>DocumentFragment</u>

      "#document-fragment".
For web developers (non-normative)
 node . <u>baseURI</u>
    Returns node's node document's document base URL.
The baseURI attribute's getter must return node document's document base URL, serialized.
For web developers (non-normative)
 node . isConnected
    Returns true if node is connected and false otherwise.
 node . ownerDocument
    Returns the <u>node document</u>. Returns null for <u>documents</u>.
 node . getRootNode()
    Returns node's root.
 node . getRootNode({ composed:true })
    Returns node's shadow-including root.
```

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 48/146

node . <u>parentNode</u>

```
node . <u>parentElement</u>
    Returns the parent element.
  node . <a href="mailto:hasChildNodes">hasChildNodes()</a>
    Returns whether node has children.
  node . <u>childNodes</u>
    Returns the children.
  node . <u>firstChild</u>
     Returns the first child.
  node . <u>lastChild</u>
    Returns the last child.
  node . previousSibling
     Returns the <u>previous sibling</u>.
  node . nextSibling
     Returns the <u>next sibling</u>.
The isConnected attribute's getter must return true, if this is connected, and false otherwise.
The ownerDocument attribute' s getter must return null, if this is a document, and this' s node document otherwise.
Note
  The <u>node document</u> of a <u>document</u> is that <u>document</u> itself. All <u>nodes</u> have a <u>node document</u> at all times.
The getRootNode (options) method, when invoked, must return this' s shadow-including root if options' s composed is
true, and this' s root otherwise.
The parentNode attribute' s getter must return this' s parent.
Note
  An Attr node has no parent.
The parentElement attribute's getter must return this's parent element.
The hasChildNodes () method, when invoked, must return true if this has children, and false otherwise.
The childNodes attribute' s getter must return a NodeList rooted at this matching only children.
The firstChild attribute's getter must return this's first child.
The lastChild attribute's getter must return this's last child.
The previous Sibling attribute's getter must return this's previous sibling.
Note
  An Attr node has no siblings.
The nextSibling attribute's getter must return this's next sibling.
The node Value attribute must return the following, depending on this:

    <u>Attr</u>

      this' s value.
```

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 49/146

4 Text

- → <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>
- ⇔ Comment

this' s data.

→ Any other node

Null.

The <u>nodeValue</u> attribute must, on setting, if the new value is null, act as if it was the empty string instead, and then do as described below, depending on <u>this</u>:

Set an existing attribute value with this and new value.

- Text
- → <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>

Replace data with node this, offset 0, count this' s length, and data new value.

→ Any other node

Do nothing.

The textContent attribute' s getter must return the following, switching on this:



- <u>DocumentFragment</u>

The descendant text content of this.

this' s value.

- <u> Text</u>
- → <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>
- <u>Comment</u>

this' s data.

→ Any other node

Null.

To **string replace all** with a string string within a <u>node</u> parent, run these steps:

- 1. Let node be null.
- 2. If string is not the empty string, then set node to a new <u>Text node</u> whose <u>data</u> is string and <u>node document</u> is parent' s <u>node document</u>.
- 3. Replace all with node within parent.

The <u>textContent</u> attribute' s setter must, if the given value is null, act as if it was the empty string instead, and then do as described below, switching on <u>this</u>:

- → <u>DocumentFragment</u>

String replace all with the given value within this.

Attr

Set an existing attribute value with this and new value.

- <u> Text</u>
- → ProcessingInstruction
- $\hookrightarrow \underline{\text{Comment}}$

Replace data with node this, offset 0, count this' s length, and data the given value.

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 50/146

→ Any other node

Do nothing.

For web developers (non-normative)

```
node . <u>normalize()</u>
```

Removes <u>empty</u> <u>exclusive Text nodes</u> and concatenates the <u>data</u> of remaining <u>contiguous exclusive Text nodes</u> into the first of their <u>nodes</u>.

The normalize () method, when invoked, must run these steps for each descendant exclusive Text node node of this:

- 1. Let length be node' s <u>length</u>.
- 2. If length is zero, then remove node and continue with the next exclusive Text node, if any.
- 3. Let data be the <u>concatenation</u> of the <u>data</u> of node's <u>contiguous exclusive Text nodes</u> (excluding itself), in <u>tree</u> order.
- 4. Replace data with node node, offset length, count 0, and data data.
- 5. Let currentNode be node' s <u>next sibling</u>.
- 6. While currentNode is an exclusive Text node:
 - 1. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>start node</u> is currentNode, add length to its <u>start offset</u> and set its <u>start node</u> to node.
 - 2. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>end node</u> is currentNode, add length to its <u>end offset</u> and set its <u>end node</u> to node.
 - 3. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>start node</u> is currentNode' s <u>parent</u> and <u>start offset</u> is currentNode' s <u>index</u>, set its <u>start node</u> to node and its <u>start offset</u> to length.
 - 4. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>end node</u> is currentNode' s <u>parent</u> and <u>end offset</u> is currentNode' s <u>index</u>, set its <u>end node</u> to node and its <u>end offset</u> to length.
 - 5. Add currentNode's <u>length</u> to length.
 - 6. Set currentNode to its next sibling.
- 7. Remove node's contiguous exclusive Text nodes (excluding itself), in tree order.

For web developers (non-normative)

```
node . \underline{\text{cloneNode}([\text{deep} = false])}
```

Returns a copy of node. If deep is true, the copy also includes the node's descendants.

node . <u>isEqualNode(otherNode)</u>

Returns whether node and otherNode have the same properties.

<u>Specifications</u> may define **cloning steps** for all or some <u>nodes</u>. The algorithm is passed copy, node, document, and an optional clone children flag, as indicated in the <u>clone</u> algorithm.

Note

HTML defines <u>cloning steps</u> for <u>script</u> and <u>input</u> elements. SVG ought to do the same for its <u>script</u> elements, but does not call this out at the moment.

To **clone** a node, with an optional document and clone children flag, run these steps:

1. If document is not given, let document be node's node document.

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 51/146

- 2. If node is an element, then:
 - 1. Let copy be the result of <u>creating an element</u>, given document, node' s <u>local name</u>, node' s <u>namespace</u>, node' s <u>namespace prefix</u>, and node' s <u>is value</u>, with the synchronous custom elements flag unset.
 - 2. For each attribute in node's attribute list:
 - 1. Let copyAttribute be a clone of attribute.
 - 2. Append copyAttribute to copy.
- 3. Otherwise, let copy be a <u>node</u> that implements the same interfaces as node, and fulfills these additional requirements, switching on node:
 - ⇔ Document

Set copy' s encoding, content type, URL, origin, type, and mode, to those of node.

<u>→ DocumentType</u>

Set copy' s <u>name</u>, <u>public ID</u>, and <u>system ID</u>, to those of node.

Attr

Set copy' s <u>namespace</u>, <u>namespace prefix</u>, <u>local name</u>, and <u>value</u>, to those of node.

- <u> Text</u>

Set copy' s data, to that of node.

→ <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>

Set copy' s target and data to those of node.

→ Any other node

_

- 4. Set copy' s <u>node document</u> and document to copy, if copy is a <u>document</u>, and set copy' s <u>node document</u> to document otherwise.
- 5. Run any <u>cloning steps</u> defined for node in <u>other applicable specifications</u> and pass copy, node, document and the clone children flag if set, as parameters.
- 6. If the clone children flag is set, <u>clone</u> all the <u>children</u> of node and append them to copy, with document as specified and the clone children flag being set.
- 7. Return copy.

The cloneNode (deep) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. If this is a shadow root, then throw a "NotSupportedError" DOMException.
- 2. Return a clone of this, with the clone children flag set if deep is true.

A <u>node</u> A **equals** a <u>node</u> B if all of the following conditions are true:

- A and B' s nodeType attribute value is identical.
- The following are also equal, depending on A:
 - → <u>DocumentType</u>

Its name, public ID, and system ID.

Its <u>namespace</u>, <u>namespace prefix</u>, <u>local name</u>, and its <u>attribute list</u>' s <u>size</u>.

<u>Attr</u>

Its namespace, local name, and value.

→ ProcessingInstruction

Its target and data.

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 52/146

```
    Text
```

Its data.

→ Any other node

_

- If A is an <u>element</u>, each <u>attribute</u> in its <u>attribute list</u> has an <u>attribute</u> that <u>equals</u> an <u>attribute</u> in B' s <u>attribute list</u>.
- A and B have the same number of children.
- Each <u>child</u> of A <u>equals</u> the <u>child</u> of B at the identical <u>index</u>.

The <u>isEqualNode</u> (otherNode) method, when invoked, must return true if otherNode is non-null and <u>this equals</u> otherNode, and false otherwise.



The isSameNode (otherNode) method, when invoked, must return true if otherNode is this, and false otherwise.

For web developers (non-normative)

```
node . <u>compareDocumentPosition(other)</u>
```

Returns a bitmask indicating the position of other relative to node. These are the bits that can be set:

```
Node . DOCUMENT POSITION DISCONNECTED (1)
```

Set when node and other are not in the same tree.

```
Node . DOCUMENT POSITION PRECEDING (2)
```

Set when other is preceding node.

Node . DOCUMENT POSITION FOLLOWING (4)

Set when other is **following** node.

Node . DOCUMENT POSITION CONTAINS (8)

Set when other is an ancestor of node.

Node . DOCUMENT POSITION CONTAINED BY (16, 10 in hexadecimal)

Set when other is a <u>descendant</u> of node.

```
node . <u>contains(other)</u>
```

Returns true if other is an inclusive descendant of node, and false otherwise.

These are the constants <u>compareDocumentPosition()</u> returns as mask:

- DOCUMENT_POSITION_DISCONNECTED (1);
- DOCUMENT_POSITION_PRECEDING (2);
- DOCUMENT_POSITION_FOLLOWING (4);
- DOCUMENT_POSITION_CONTAINS (8);
- DOCUMENT_POSITION_CONTAINED_BY (16, 10 in hexadecimal);
- DOCUMENT_POSITION_IMPLEMENTATION_SPECIFIC (32, 20 in hexadecimal).

The compareDocumentPosition(other) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. If this is other, then return zero.
- 2. Let node1 be other and node2 be this.
- 3. Let attr1 and attr2 be null.
- 4. If node1 is an attribute, then set attr1 to node1 and node1 to attr1' s element.
- 5. If node2 is an attribute, then:
 - 1. Set attr2 to node2 and node2 to attr2' s element.
 - 2. If attr1 and node1 are non-null, and node2 is node1, then:
 - 1. For each attr in node2' s attribute list:

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 53/146

- 1. If attr <u>equals</u> attr1, then return the result of adding <u>DOCUMENT POSITION IMPLEMENTATION SPECIFIC</u> and <u>DOCUMENT POSITION PRECEDING</u>.
- 2. If attr <u>equals</u> attr2, then return the result of adding <u>DOCUMENT POSITION IMPLEMENTATION SPECIFIC</u> and <u>DOCUMENT POSITION FOLLOWING</u>.
- 6. If node1 or node2 is null, or node1' s <u>root</u> is not node2' s <u>root</u>, then return the result of adding <u>DOCUMENT POSITION DISCONNECTED</u>, <u>DOCUMENT POSITION IMPLEMENTATION SPECIFIC</u>, and either <u>DOCUMENT POSITION PRECEDING</u> or <u>DOCUMENT POSITION FOLLOWING</u>, with the constraint that this is to be consistent, together.

Note

Whether to return <u>DOCUMENT POSITION PRECEDING</u> or <u>DOCUMENT POSITION FOLLOWING</u> is typically implemented via pointer comparison. In JavaScript implementations a cached Math. random() value can be used.

- 7. If node1 is an <u>ancestor</u> of node2 and attr1 is null, or node1 is node2 and attr2 is non-null, then return the result of adding <u>DOCUMENT POSITION CONTAINS</u> to <u>DOCUMENT POSITION PRECEDING</u>.
- 8. If node1 is a <u>descendant</u> of node2 and attr2 is null, or node1 is node2 and attr1 is non-null, then return the result of adding <u>DOCUMENT POSITION CONTAINED BY</u> to <u>DOCUMENT POSITION FOLLOWING</u>.
- 9. If node1 is <u>preceding</u> node2, then return <u>DOCUMENT POSITION PRECEDING</u>.

Note

Due to the way <u>attributes</u> are handled in this algorithm this results in a <u>node</u>' s <u>attributes</u> counting as <u>preceding</u> that <u>node</u>' s <u>children</u>, despite <u>attributes</u> not <u>participating</u> in a <u>tree</u>.

10. Return DOCUMENT POSITION FOLLOWING.

The contains (other) method, when invoked, must return true if other is an <u>inclusive descendant</u> of <u>this</u>, and false otherwise (including when other is null).

To **locate a namespace prefix** for an element using namespace, run these steps:

- 1. If element's <u>namespace</u> is namespace and its <u>namespace prefix</u> is non-null, then return its <u>namespace prefix</u>.
- 2. If element <u>has</u> an <u>attribute</u> whose <u>namespace prefix</u> is "xmlns" and <u>value</u> is namespace, then return element' s first such <u>attribute</u>' s <u>local name</u>.
- 3. If element' s <u>parent element</u> is not null, then return the result of running <u>locate a namespace prefix</u> on that <u>element</u> using namespace.
- 4. Return null.

To **locate a namespace** for a node using prefix, switch on node:

<u> Element</u>

- 1. If its <u>namespace</u> is non-null and its <u>namespace prefix</u> is prefix, then return <u>namespace</u>.
- 2. If it <u>has</u> an <u>attribute</u> whose <u>namespace</u> is the <u>XMLNS namespace</u>, <u>namespace prefix</u> is "xmlns", and <u>local name</u> is prefix, or if prefix is null and it <u>has</u> an <u>attribute</u> whose <u>namespace</u> is the <u>XMLNS namespace</u>, <u>namespace</u> <u>prefix</u> is null, and <u>local name</u> is "xmlns", then return its <u>value</u> if it is not the empty string, and null otherwise.
- 3. If its parent element is null, then return null.
- 4. Return the result of running locate a namespace on its parent element using prefix.

→ <u>Document</u>

- 1. If its document element is null, then return null.
- 2. Return the result of running <u>locate a namespace</u> on its <u>document element</u> using prefix.

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 54/146

<u>DocumentFragment</u>

Return null.

- Attr
- 1. If its <u>element</u> is null, then return null.
- 2. Return the result of running locate a namespace on its element using prefix.

→ Any other node

- 1. If its <u>parent element</u> is null, then return null.
- 2. Return the result of running locate a namespace on its parent element using prefix.

The lookupPrefix (namespace) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If namespace is null or the empty string, then return null.
- 2. Switch on this:

Return the result of <u>locating a namespace prefix</u> for it using namespace.

⇔ Document

Return the result of <u>locating a namespace prefix</u> for its <u>document element</u>, if its <u>document element</u> is non-null, and null otherwise.

- → <u>DocumentType</u>
- → <u>DocumentFragment</u>

Return null.

 $\hookrightarrow Attr$

Return the result of <u>locating a namespace prefix</u> for its <u>element</u>, if its <u>element</u> is non-null, and null otherwise.

→ Any other node

Return the result of <u>locating a namespace prefix</u> for its <u>parent element</u>, if its <u>parent element</u> is non-null, and null otherwise.

The lookupNamespaceURI (prefix) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

✓ MDN

- 1. If prefix is the empty string, then set it to null.
- 2. Return the result of running locate a namespace for this using prefix.

The isDefaultNamespace (namespace) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. If namespace is the empty string, then set it to null.
- 2. Let defaultNamespace be the result of running locate a namespace for this using null.
- 3. Return true if defaultNamespace is the same as namespace, and false otherwise.

The insertBefore (node, child) method, when invoked, must return the result of <u>pre-inserting</u> node into <u>this</u> before child.

The appendChild (node) method, when invoked, must return the result of appending node to this.

The replaceChild (node, child) method, when invoked, must return the result of replacing child with node within this.

The removeChild (child) method, when invoked, must return the result of pre-removing child from this.

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 55/146

The **list of elements with qualified name qualifiedName** for a <u>node</u> root is the <u>HTMLCollection</u> returned by the following algorithm:

- 1. If qualifiedName is "*" (U+002A), return a <u>HTMLCollection</u> rooted at root, whose filter matches only <u>descendant</u> elements.
- 2. Otherwise, if root's <u>node document</u> is an <u>HTML document</u>, return a <u>HTMLCollection</u> rooted at root, whose filter matches the following <u>descendant elements</u>:
 - Whose <u>namespace</u> is the <u>HTML namespace</u> and whose <u>qualified name</u> is qualifiedName, in <u>ASCII lowercase</u>.
 - Whose <u>namespace</u> is not the <u>HTML namespace</u> and whose <u>qualified name</u> is qualifiedName.
- 3. Otherwise, return a <u>HTMLCollection</u> rooted at root, whose filter matches <u>descendant</u> <u>elements</u> whose <u>qualified name</u> is qualifiedName.

When invoked with the same argument, and as long as root's <u>node document</u>'s <u>type</u> has not changed, the same <u>HTMLCollection</u> object may be returned as returned by an earlier call.

The **list of elements with namespace namespace and local name localName** for a <u>node</u> root is the <u>HTMLCollection</u> returned by the following algorithm:

- 1. If namespace is the empty string, set it to null.
- 2. If both namespace and localName are "*" (U+002A), return a <u>HTMLCollection</u> rooted at root, whose filter matches descendant elements.
- 3. Otherwise, if namespace is "*" (U+002A), return a <u>HTMLCollection</u> rooted at root, whose filter matches <u>descendant/decenda</u>
- 4. Otherwise, if localName is "*" (U+002A), return a <u>HTMLCollection</u> rooted at root, whose filter matches <u>descendant</u> elements whose <a href="https://example.com/nample
- 5. Otherwise, return a <a href="https://example.com/https://exampl

When invoked with the same arguments, the same HTMLCollection object may be returned as returned by an earlier call.

The **list of elements with class names classNames** for a <u>node</u> root is the <u>HTMLCollection</u> returned by the following algorithm:

- 1. Let classes be the result of running the <u>ordered set parser</u> on classNames.
- 2. If classes is the empty set, return an empty HTMLCollection.
- 3. Return a <u>HTMLCollection</u> rooted at root, whose filter matches <u>descendant_elements</u> that have all their <u>classes</u> in classes.

The comparisons for the <u>classes</u> must be done in an <u>ASCII case-insensitive</u> manner if root's <u>node document</u>'s <u>mode</u> is "quirks", and in an <u>identical to</u> manner otherwise.

When invoked with the same argument, the same HTMLCollection object may be returned as returned by an earlier call.

4.5. Interface **Document** §

```
✓ MDN
```

```
ID [Exposed=Window]
Interface Document : Node {
    constructor();

    [SameObject] readonly attribute DOMImplementation implementation;
    readonly attribute USVString URL;

File an issue about the selected text ocumentURI;
```

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 56/146

```
readonly attribute <a href="DOMString">DOMString</a> <a href="compatMode">compatMode</a>;
  readonly attribute DOMString characterSet;
  readonly attribute DOMString charset; // historical alias of .characterSet
  readonly attribute DOMString inputEncoding; // historical alias of .characterSet
  readonly attribute <a href="DOMString">DOMString</a> <a href="contentType">contentType</a>;
  readonly attribute <a href="DocumentType">DocumentType</a>? <a href="doctype">doctype</a>;
  readonly attribute <a>Element</a>? <a>documentElement</a>;</a>
  <u>HTMLCollection</u> <u>getElementsByTagName</u>(<u>DOMString</u> qualifiedName);
  HTMLCollection getElementsByTagNameNS (DOMString? namespace, DOMString localName);
  <u>HTMLCollection</u> <u>getElementsByClassName</u>(<u>DOMString</u> classNames);
  [CEReactions, NewObject] Element createElement(DOMString localName, optional (DOMString or
ElementCreationOptions = {});
  [CEReactions, NewObject] Element createElementNS(DOMString? namespace, DOMString qualifiedName,
optional (DOMString or ElementCreationOptions) options = {});
  [NewObject] DocumentFragment createDocumentFragment();
  [NewObject] Text createTextNode(DOMString data);
  [NewObject] CDATASection createCDATASection (DOMString data);
  [NewObject] Comment createComment (DOMString data);
  [NewObject] ProcessingInstruction createProcessingInstruction (DOMString target, DOMString data);
  [CEReactions, NewObject] Node importNode (Node node, optional boolean deep = false);
  [CEReactions] Node adoptNode (Node node);
  [NewObject] Attr createAttribute(DOMString localName);
  [NewObject] Attr createAttributeNS (DOMString? namespace, DOMString qualifiedName);
  [NewObject] Event createEvent (DOMString interface); // historical
  [NewObject] Range createRange();
  // NodeFilter.SHOW_ALL = 0xFFFFFFFF
  [NewObject] NodeIterator createNodeIterator(Node root, optional unsigned long whatToShow = OxFFFFFFFF,
optional <u>NodeFilter</u>? filter = null);
  [NewObject] TreeWalker createTreeWalker(Node root, optional unsigned long whatToShow = 0xFFFFFFFF,
optional <u>NodeFilter</u>? filter = null);
};
[Exposed=Window]
interface XMLDocument : Document {};
dictionary ElementCreationOptions {
  <u>DOMString</u> is;
```

<u>Document</u> <u>nodes</u> are simply known as **documents**.

Each <u>document</u> has an associated <u>encoding</u> (an <u>encoding</u>), <u>content type</u> (a string), <u>URL</u> (a <u>URL</u>), <u>origin</u> (an <u>origin</u>), <u>type</u> ("xml" or "html"), and <u>mode</u> ("no-quirks", "quirks", or "limited-quirks"). [ENCODING] [URL] [HTML]

Unless stated otherwise, a <u>document</u>' s <u>encoding</u> is the <u>utf-8 encoding</u>, <u>content type</u> is "application/xml", <u>URL</u> is "about:blank", <u>origin</u> is an <u>opaque origin</u>, <u>type</u> is "xml", and its <u>mode</u> is "no-quirks".

A <u>document</u> is said to be an **XML document** if its <u>type</u> is "xml", and an **HTML document** otherwise. Whether a <u>document</u> is an <u>HTML document</u> or an <u>XML document</u> affects the behavior of certain APIs.

A <u>document</u> is said to be in **no-quirks mode** if its <u>mode</u> is "no-quirks", **quirks mode** if its <u>mode</u> is "quirks", and **limited-quirks**", and **limited-quirks**".

Note

The <u>mode</u> is only ever changed from the default for <u>documents</u> created by the <u>HTML parser</u> based on the presence, absence, or value of the DOCTYPE string, and by a new <u>browsing context</u> (initial "about:blank"). [HTML]

<u>No-quirks mode</u> was originally known as "standards mode" and <u>limited-quirks mode</u> was once known as "almost standards mode". They have been renamed because their details are now defined by standards. (And because lan Hickson vetoed their original names on the basis that they are nonsensical.)

A <u>document</u>' s <u>get the parent</u> algorithm, given an event, returns null if event' s <u>type</u> attribute value is "load" or <u>document</u> does not have a <u>browsing context</u>, and the <u>document</u>' s <u>relevant global object</u> otherwise.

```
For web developers (non-normative)

document = new Document()

Returns a new document.

document . implementation

Returns document' s DOMImplementation object.

document . URL

document . documentURI

Returns document' s URL.

document . compatMode

Returns the string "BackCompat" if document' s mode is "quirks", and "CSS1Compat" otherwise.

document . characterSet

Returns document' s encoding.

document . contentType

Returns document' s content type.
```

The <u>Document</u>() constructor, when invoked, must return a new <u>document</u> whose <u>origin</u> is the <u>origin</u> of <u>current global</u> <u>object</u>' s <u>associated <u>Document</u>. [HTML]</u>

Note

Unlike createDocument (), this constructor does not return an XMLDocument object, but a document (<a href="

The implementation attribute's getter must return the <u>DOMImplementation</u> object that is associated with the <u>document</u>.

The URL attribute' s getter and document URL attribute' s getter must return the URL, serialized.

The compatMode attribute's getter must return "BackCompat" if this's mode is "quirks", and "CSS1Compat" otherwise.

The characterSet attribute's getter, charset attribute's getter, and inputEncoding attribute's getter, must return this's encoding's name.

The contentType attribute's getter must return the content type.

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 58/146

For web developers (non-normative)

document . $\underline{\text{doctype}}$

Returns the <u>doctype</u> or null if there is none.

document.documentElement

Returns the document element.

collection = document. getElementsByTagName (qualifiedName)

If qualifiedName is "*" returns a HTMLCollection of all descendant elements.

Otherwise, returns a <u>HTMLCollection</u> of all <u>descendant elements</u> whose <u>qualified name</u> is qualified Name. (Matches case-insensitively against <u>elements</u> in the <u>HTML namespace</u> within an <u>HTML document</u>.)

collection = document. getElementsByTagNameNS (namespace, localName)

If namespace and localName are "*" returns a HTMLCollection of all descendant elements.

If only namespace is "*" returns a HTMLCollection of all descendant elements whose local name is localName.

If only localName is "*" returns a <u>HTMLCollection</u> of all <u>descendant</u> elements whose <u>namespace</u> is namespace.

Otherwise, returns a <u>HTMLCollection</u> of all <u>descendant elements</u> whose <u>namespace</u> is namespace and <u>local name</u> is localName.

collection = document. getElementsByClassName(classNames)

collection = element . getElementsByClassName(classNames)

Returns a <u>HTMLCollection</u> of the <u>elements</u> in the object on which the method was invoked (a <u>document</u> or an <u>element</u>) that have all the classes given by classNames. The classNames argument is interpreted as a space-separated list of classes.

The doctype attribute's getter must return the child of the document that is a doctype, and null otherwise.



The documentElement attribute' s getter must return the document element.

The getElementsByTagName (qualifiedName) method, when invoked, must return the <u>list of elements with qualified name qualifiedName</u> for this.

Note

Thus, in an <u>HTML document</u>, document. getElementsByTagName ("F00") will match $\langle F00\rangle$ elements that are not in the <u>HTML namespace</u>, but not $\langle F00\rangle$ elements that are in the <u>HTML namespace</u>, but not $\langle F00\rangle$ elements that are in the <u>HTML namespace</u>.

The getElementsByTagNameNS (namespace, localName) method, when invoked, must return the <u>list of elements with namespace namespace and local name localName</u> for <u>this</u>.

The getElementsByClassName (classNames) method, when invoked, must return the <u>list of elements with class names</u> <u>classNames</u> for <u>this</u>.

Example

Given the following XHTML fragment:

```
<div id="example">

</div>
```

A call to document.getElementById("example").getElementsByClassName("aaa") would return a <u>HTMLCollection</u> with the two paragraphs p1 and p2 in it.

A call to <code>getElementsByClassName("ccc bbb")</code> would only return one node, however, namely p3. A call to document. <code>getElementById("example")</code>. <code>getElementsByClassName("bbb ccc ")</code> would return the same thing.

A call to getElementsByClassName ("aaa, bbb") would return no nodes; none of the elements above are in the aaa, bbb

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 59/146

```
For web developers (non-normative)
element = document . <a href="mailto:createElement(localName">createElement(localName</a> [, options])
```

Returns an <u>element</u> with localName as <u>local name</u> (if document is an <u>HTML document</u>, localName gets lowercased). The <u>element</u>'s <u>namespace</u> is the <u>HTML namespace</u> when document is an <u>HTML document</u> or document's <u>content type</u> is "application/xhtml+xml", and null otherwise.

If localName does not match the Name production an "InvalidCharacterError" DOMException will be thrown.

When supplied, options' s is can be used to create a customized built-in element.

```
element = document . <a href="mailto:createElementNS">createElementNS</a> (namespace, qualifiedName [, options])
```

Returns an <u>element</u> with <u>namespace</u> namespace. Its <u>namespace prefix</u> will be everything before ":" (U+003E) in qualifiedName or null. Its <u>local name</u> will be everything after ":" (U+003E) in qualifiedName or qualifiedName.

If localName does not match the Name production an "InvalidCharacterError" DOMException will be thrown.

If one of the following conditions is true a "NamespaceError" DOMException will be thrown:

- localName does not match the <a>QName production.
- Namespace prefix is not null and namespace is the empty string.
- Namespace prefix is "xml" and namespace is not the XML namespace.
- qualifiedName or <u>namespace prefix</u> is "xmlns" and namespace is not the <u>XMLNS namespace</u>.
- namespace is the XMLNS namespace and neither qualifiedName nor namespace prefix is "xmlns".

When supplied, options' s is can be used to create a <u>customized built-in element</u>.

```
documentFragment = document . createDocumentFragment()
Returns a DocumentFragment node.

text = document . createTextNode(data)
Returns a Text node whose data is data.

text = document . createCDATASection(data)
Returns a CDATASection node whose data is data.

comment = document . createComment(data)
Returns a Comment node whose data is data.

processingInstruction = document . createProcessingInstruction(target, data)
Returns a ProcessingInstruction node whose target is target and data is data. If target does not match the Name production an "InvalidCharacterError" DOMException will be thrown.
```

The **element interface** for any name and namespace is <u>Element</u>, unless stated otherwise.

Note

The HTML Standard will e.g. define that for html and the <u>HTML namespace</u>, the <u>HTMLHtmlElement</u> interface is used. [HTML]

The createElement (localName, options) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If localName does not match the Name production, then throw an "InvalidCharacterError" DOMException.
- 2. If this is an HTML document, then set localName to localName in ASCII lowercase.
- 3. Let is be null.
- 4. If options is a dictionary and options' s is present, then set is to it.
- 5. Let namespace be the <u>HTML namespace</u>, if <u>this</u> is an <u>HTML document</u> or <u>this</u>' s <u>content type</u> is "application/xhtml+xml", and null otherwise.
- 6. Return the result of creating an <u>element</u> given <u>this</u>, localName, namespace, null, is, and with the synchronous <u>File an issue about the selected text</u>

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 60/146

The internal createElementNS steps, given document, namespace, qualifiedName, and options, are as follows:

- 1. Let namespace, prefix, and localName be the result of passing namespace and qualifiedName to <u>validate and extract</u>.
- 2. Let is be null.
- 3. If options is a dictionary and options' s is present, then set is to it.
- 4. Return the result of <u>creating an element</u> given document, localName, namespace, prefix, is, and with the synchronous custom elements flag set.

The createElementNS (namespace, qualifiedName, options) method, when invoked, must return the result of running the <u>internal createElementNS steps</u>, given <u>this</u>, namespace, qualifiedName, and options.

Note

createElement() and createElementNS()'s options parameter is allowed to be a string for web compatibility.



The createDocumentFragment () method, when invoked, must return a new <u>DocumentFragment</u> <u>node</u> with its <u>node</u> <u>document</u> set to <u>this</u>.

The createTextNode (data) method, when invoked, must return a new <u>Text node</u> with its <u>data</u> set to data and <u>node</u> <u>document</u> set to <u>this</u>.

Note

No check is performed that data consists of characters that match the **Char** production.



The createCDATASection (data) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If this is an HTML document, then throw a "NotSupportedError" DOMException.
- 2. If data contains the string "]]>", then throw an "InvalidCharacterError" DOMException.
- 3. Return a new CDATASection node with its data set to data and node document set to this.

The createComment (data) method, when invoked, must return a new Comment node with its data set to data and node document set to this.

Note

No check is performed that data consists of characters that match the <u>Char</u> production or that it contains two adjacent hyphens or ends with a hyphen.

The createProcessingInstruction(target, data) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If target does not match the Name production, then throw an "InvalidCharacterError" DOMException.
- 2. If data contains the string "?>", then throw an "InvalidCharacterError" DOMException.
- 3. Return a new ProcessingInstruction node, with target set to target, data set to data, and node document set to this.

Note

No check is performed that target contains "xml" or ":", or that data contains characters that match the <u>Char</u> production.

For web developers (non-normative)

clone = document . <u>importNode(node [, deep = false])</u>

Returns a copy of node. If deep is true, the copy also includes the node' s descendants.

If node is a <u>document</u> or a <u>shadow root</u>, throws a "<u>NotSupportedError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 61/146

node = document . adoptNode(node)

Moves node from another document and returns it.

If node is a <u>document</u>, throws a "<u>NotSupportedError</u>" <u>DOMException</u> or, if node is a <u>shadow root</u>, throws a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.

The importNode (node, deep) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. If node is a <u>document</u> or <u>shadow root</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>NotSupportedError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. Return a <u>clone</u> of node, with <u>this</u> and the clone children flag set if deep is true.

<u>Specifications</u> may define **adopting steps** for all or some <u>nodes</u>. The algorithm is passed node and oldDocument, as indicated in the <u>adopt</u> algorithm.

To adopt a node into a document, run these steps:

- 1. Let oldDocument be node's node document.
- 2. If node' s parent is non-null, then remove node.
- 3. If document is not oldDocument, then:
 - 1. For each inclusiveDescendant in node's shadow-including inclusive descendants:
 - 1. Set inclusiveDescendant's node document to document.
 - 2. If inclusiveDescendant is an <u>element</u>, then set the <u>node document</u> of each <u>attribute</u> in inclusiveDescendant' s <u>attribute list</u> to document.
 - 2. For each inclusiveDescendant in node's <u>shadow-including inclusive descendants</u> that is <u>custom</u>, <u>enqueue a custom element callback reaction</u> with inclusiveDescendant, callback name "adoptedCallback", and an argument list containing oldDocument and document.
 - 3. For each inclusiveDescendant in node's <u>shadow-including inclusive descendants</u>, in <u>shadow-including tree</u> <u>order</u>, run the <u>adopting steps</u> with inclusiveDescendant and oldDocument.

The adoptNode (node) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. If node is a <u>document</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>NotSupportedError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. If node is a shadow root, then throw a "HierarchyRequestError" DOMException.
- 3. If node is a <u>DocumentFragment</u> <u>node</u> whose <u>host</u> is non-null, then return.
- 4. Adopt node into this.
- 5. Return node.

The createAttribute (localName) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. If localName does not match the Name production in XML, then throw an "InvalidCharacterError" DOMException.
- 2. If this is an HTML document, then set localName to localName in ASCII lowercase.
- 3. Return a new attribute whose local name is localName and node document is this.

The createAttributeNS (namespace, qualifiedName) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let namespace, prefix, and localName be the result of passing namespace and qualifiedName to <u>validate and extract</u>.
- 2. Return a new <u>attribute</u> whose <u>namespace</u> is namespace, <u>namespace prefix</u> is prefix, <u>local name</u> is localName, and <u>node document</u> is <u>this</u>.

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 62/146

The createEvent (interface) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

1. Let constructor be null.



2. If interface is an <u>ASCII case-insensitive</u> match for any of the strings in the first column in the following table, then set constructor to the interface in the second column on the same row as the matching string:

String	Interface	Notes
"beforeunloadevent"	<u>BeforeUnloadEvent</u>	[HTML]
"compositionevent"	<u>CompositionEvent</u>	[UIEVENTS]
"customevent"	<u>CustomEvent</u>	
"devicemotionevent"	<u>DeviceMotionEvent</u>	[DEVICE-ORIENTATION]
"deviceorientationevent"	<pre>DeviceOrientationEvent</pre>	
"dragevent"	<u>DragEvent</u>	[HTML]
"event"	<u>Event</u>	
"events"		
"focusevent"	<u>FocusEvent</u>	[<u>UIEVENTS]</u>
"hashchangeevent"	<u>HashChangeEvent</u>	[HTML]
"htmlevents"	<u>Event</u>	
"keyboardevent"	<u>KeyboardEvent</u>	[<u>UIEVENTS]</u>
"messageevent"	<u>MessageEvent</u>	[HTML]
"mouseevent"	<u>MouseEvent</u>	[<u>UIEVENTS]</u>
"mouseevents"		
"storageevent"	<u>StorageEvent</u>	[HTML]
"svgevents"	<u>Event</u>	
"textevent"	<u>CompositionEvent</u>	[UIEVENTS]
"touchevent"	<u>TouchEvent</u>	[TOUCH-EVENTS]
"uievent"	<u>UIEvent</u>	[<u>UIEVENTS]</u>
"uievents"		

- 3. If constructor is null, then throw a "DOMException.
- 4. If the interface indicated by constructor is not exposed on the <u>relevant global object</u> of <u>this</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>NotSupportedError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.

Note

Typically user agents disable support for touch events in some configurations, in which case this clause would be triggered for the interface <u>TouchEvent</u>.

- 5. Let event be the result of <u>creating an event</u> given constructor.
- 6. Initialize event' s type attribute to the empty string.
- 7. Initialize event's <u>timeStamp</u> attribute to a <u>DOMHighResTimeStamp</u> representing the high resolution time from the <u>time</u> <u>origin</u> to now.
- 8. Initialize event's <u>isTrusted</u> attribute to false.
- 9. Unset event's initialized flag.
- 10. Return event.

Note

Event constructors ought to be used instead.

✓ MDN

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 63/146

Note

The Range () constructor can be used instead.

The createNodeIterator(root, whatToShow, filter) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. Let iterator be a new Node I terator object.
- 2. Set iterator' s root and iterator' s reference to root.
- 3. Set iterator's pointer before reference to true.
- 4. Set iterator' s whatToShow to whatToShow.
- 5. Set iterator's filter to filter.
- 6. Return iterator.

The createTreeWalker(root, whatToShow, filter) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. Let walker be a new <u>TreeWalker</u> object.
- 2. Set walker's <u>root</u> and walker's <u>current</u> to root.
- 3. Set walker's whatToShow to whatToShow.
- 4. Set walker's filter to filter.
- 5. Return walker.

4.5.1. Interface DOMImplementation

User agents must create a <u>DOMImplementation</u> object whenever a <u>document</u> is created and associate it with that <u>document</u>.

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface DOMImplementation {

[NewObject] DocumentType createDocumentType(DOMString qualifiedName, DOMString publicId, DOMString systemId);

[NewObject] XMLDocument createDocument(DOMString? namespace, [LegacyNullToEmptyString] DOMString qualifiedName, optional DocumentType? doctype = null);

[NewObject] Document createHTMLDocument(optional DOMString title);

boolean hasFeature(); // useless; always returns true
};
```

For web developers (non-normative)

```
doctype = document . <u>implementation</u> . <u>createDocumentType(qualifiedName, publicId, systemId)</u>

Returns a <u>doctype</u>, with the given qualifiedName, publicId, and systemId. If qualifiedName does not match the <u>Name</u> production, an "<u>InvalidCharacterError</u>" <u>DOMException</u> is thrown, and if it does not match the <u>QName</u> production, a "<u>NamespaceError</u>" <u>DOMException</u> is thrown.
```

doc = document . <u>implementation</u> . <u>createDocument (namespace, qualifiedName [, doctype = null])</u>

Returns an <u>XMLDocument</u>, with a <u>document element</u> whose <u>local name</u> is qualifiedName and whose <u>namespace</u> is namespace (unless qualifiedName is the empty string), and with doctype, if it is given, as its <u>doctype</u>.

This method throws the same exceptions as the <u>createElementNS()</u> method, when invoked with namespace and

doc = document . implementation . createHTMLDocument([title])

File an issue about the selected text

qualifiedName.

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 64/146

Returns a <u>document</u>, with a basic <u>tree</u> already constructed including a <u>title</u> element, unless the title argument is omitted.

The createDocumentType (qualifiedName, publicId, systemId) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Validate qualifiedName.
- 2. Return a new <u>doctype</u>, with qualifiedName as its <u>name</u>, publicId as its <u>public ID</u>, and systemId as its <u>system ID</u>, and with its <u>node document</u> set to the associated <u>document</u> of <u>this</u>.

Note

No check is performed that publicId code points match the <u>PubidChar</u> production or that systemId does not contain both a '" and a "' ".

The createDocument (namespace, qualifiedName, doctype) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let document be a new <u>XMLDocument</u>.
- 2. Let element be null.
- 3. If qualifiedName is not the empty string, then set element to the result of running the <u>internal createElementNS</u> <u>steps</u>, given document, namespace, qualifiedName, and an empty dictionary.
- 4. If doctype is non-null, append doctype to document.
- 5. If element is non-null, append element to document.
- 6. document' s origin is this' s associated document' s origin.
- 7. document' s <u>content type</u> is determined by namespace:

application/xhtml+xml

image/svg+xml

application/xml

Return document.

The createHTMLDocument (title) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. Let doc be a new document that is an HTML document.
- 2. Set doc's content type to "text/html".
- 3. Append a new doctype, with "html" as its name and with its node document set to doc, to doc.
- 4. Append the result of creating an element given doc, html, and the HTML namespace, to doc.
- 5. <u>Append</u> the result of <u>creating an element</u> given doc, <u>head</u>, and the <u>HTML namespace</u>, to the <u>html</u> element created earlier.
- 6. If title is given:
 - 1. <u>Append</u> the result of <u>creating an element</u> given doc, <u>title</u>, and the <u>HTML namespace</u>, to the <u>head</u> element created earlier.
 - 2. <u>Append</u> a new <u>Text node</u>, with its <u>data</u> set to title (which could be the empty string) and its <u>node document</u> set to doc, to the <u>title</u> element created earlier.
- 7. <u>Append</u> the result of <u>creating an element</u> given doc, <u>body</u>, and the <u>HTML namespace</u>, to the <u>html</u> element created earlier.
- O doc' c origin is this' c associated document' s origin. File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 65/146

9. Return doc.

The hasFeature () method, when invoked, must return true.

Note

hasFeature () originally would report whether the user agent claimed to support a given DOM feature, but experience proved it was not nearly as reliable or granular as simply checking whether the desired objects, attributes, or methods existed. As such, it is no longer to be used, but continues to exist (and simply returns true) so that old pages don't stop working.

4.6. Interface <u>DocumentType</u> §

```
✓ MDN
```

```
[Exposed=Window]
L interface DocumentType : Node {
    readonly attribute DOMString name;
    readonly attribute DOMString publicId;
    readonly attribute DOMString systemId;
};
```

<u>DocumentType</u> <u>nodes</u> are simply known as **doctypes**.

Doctypes have an associated name, public ID, and system ID.

When a <u>doctype</u> is created, its <u>name</u> is always given. Unless explicitly given when a <u>doctype</u> is created, its <u>public ID</u> and <u>system ID</u> are the empty string.

The name attribute's getter must return this's name.

The publicId attribute's getter must return this's public ID.

The systemId attribute's getter must return this's system ID.

4.7. Interface DocumentFragment §

```
✓ MDN
```

```
ID [Exposed=Window]
L interface DocumentFragment : Node {
    constructor();
};
```

A <u>DocumentFragment</u> <u>node</u> has an associated **host** (null or an <u>element</u> in a different <u>node tree</u>). It is null unless otherwise stated.

An object A is a **host-including inclusive ancestor** of an object B, if either A is an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of B, or if B' s <u>root</u> has a non-null <u>host</u> and A is a <u>host-including inclusive ancestor</u> of B' s <u>root</u>' s <u>host</u>.

Note

The <u>DocumentPragment node</u>'s <u>host</u> concept is useful for HTML's <u>template</u> element and for <u>shadow roots</u>, and impacts the <u>pre-insert</u> and <u>replace</u> algorithms.

For web developers (non-normative)
 tree = new <u>DocumentFragment()</u>
 Returns a new <u>DocumentFragment node</u>.

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 66/146

The DocumentFragment () constructor, when invoked, must return a new <u>DocumentFragment node</u> whose <u>node document</u> is <u>current global object</u>'s <u>associated Document</u>.

4.8. Interface ShadowRoot §

```
✓ MDN
```

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface ShadowRoot : DocumentFragment {
    readonly attribute ShadowRootMode mode;
    readonly attribute Element host;
    attribute EventHandler onslotchange;
};
enum ShadowRootMode { "open", "closed" };
```

ShadowRoot nodes are simply known as shadow roots.

Shadow roots have an associated mode ("open" or "closed").

<u>Shadow roots</u> have an associated **delegates focus**. It is initially set to false.

<u>Shadow roots</u> have an associated **available to element internals**. It is initially set to false.

<u>Shadow roots</u>' s associated <u>host</u> is never null.

A <u>shadow root</u>' s <u>get the parent</u> algorithm, given an event, returns null if event' s <u>composed flag</u> is unset and <u>shadow root</u> is the <u>root</u> of event' s <u>path</u>' s first struct' s <u>invocation target</u>, and <u>shadow root</u>' s <u>host</u> otherwise.

The mode attribute's getter must return this's mode.

The host attribute's getter must return this's host.

The onslotchange attribute is an <u>event handler IDL attribute</u> for the <u>onslotchange</u> <u>event handler</u>, whose <u>event handler</u> <u>event type</u> is <u>slotchange</u>.

In **shadow-including tree order** is <u>shadow-including preorder</u>, <u>depth-first traversal</u> of a <u>node tree</u>. **Shadow-including preorder**, <u>depth-first traversal</u> of a <u>node tree</u> tree is preorder, depth-first traversal of tree, with for each <u>shadow host</u> encountered in tree, <u>shadow-including preorder</u>, <u>depth-first traversal</u> of that <u>element</u>' s <u>shadow root</u>' s <u>node tree</u> just after it is encountered.

The **shadow-including root** of an object is its <u>root</u>' s <u>host</u>' s <u>shadow-including root</u>, if the object' s <u>root</u> is a <u>shadow root</u>, and its <u>root</u> otherwise.

An object A is a **shadow-including descendant** of an object B, if A is a <u>descendant</u> of B, or A' s <u>root</u> is a <u>shadow root</u> and A' s <u>root</u>' s <u>host</u> is a <u>shadow-including inclusive descendant</u> of B.

A shadow-including inclusive descendant is an object or one of its shadow-including descendants.

An object A is a **shadow-including ancestor** of an object B, if and only if B is a <u>shadow-including descendant</u> of A.

A shadow-including inclusive ancestor is an object or one of its shadow-including ancestors.

A <u>node</u> A is **closed-shadow-hidden** from a <u>node</u> B if all of the following conditions are true:

- A' s root is a shadow root.
- A' s <u>root</u> is not a <u>shadow-including inclusive ancestor</u> of B.

File an issue about the selected text see mode is "closed" or A's root's host is closed-shadow-hidden from B.

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 67/146

To retarget an object A against an object B, repeat these steps until they return an object:

- 1. If one of the following is true
 - A is not a <u>node</u>
 - A' s <u>root</u> is not a <u>shadow root</u>
 - B is a <u>node</u> and A' s <u>root</u> is a <u>shadow-including inclusive ancestor</u> of B

then return A.

2. Set A to A' s root' s host.

Note

The <u>retargeting</u> algorithm is used by <u>event dispatch</u> as well as other specifications, such as Fullscreen. [FULLSCREEN]

4.9. Interface Element §



```
ID
    [Exposed=Window]
    interface Element : Node {
       readonly attribute DOMString? namespaceURI;
       readonly attribute <a href="DOMString">DOMString</a>? <a href="prefix">prefix</a>;
       readonly attribute DOMString localName;
       readonly attribute DOMString tagName;
       [CEReactions] attribute DOMString id;
       [CEReactions] attribute DOMString className;
       [SameObject, PutForwards=value] readonly attribute DOMTokenList classList;
       [CEReactions, Unscopable] attribute DOMString slot;
      boolean hasAttributes();
       [SameObject] readonly attribute NamedNodeMap attributes;
       sequence < DOMString > getAttributeNames ();
       <u>DOMString</u>? <u>getAttribute</u> (<u>DOMString</u> qualifiedName);
       <u>DOMString</u>? <u>getAttributeNS</u>(<u>DOMString</u>? namespace, <u>DOMString</u> localName);
       [CEReactions] undefined setAttribute(DOMString qualifiedName, DOMString value);
       [CEReactions] undefined setAttributeNS(DOMString? namespace, DOMString qualifiedName, DOMString
    value);
       [CEReactions] undefined removeAttribute(DOMString qualifiedName);
       [CEReactions] undefined removeAttributeNS(DOMString? namespace, DOMString localName);
       [CEReactions] boolean toggleAttribute(DOMString qualifiedName, optional boolean force);
       boolean hasAttribute (DOMString qualifiedName);
       boolean hasAttributeNS (DOMString? namespace, DOMString localName);
       <u>Attr?</u> <u>getAttributeNode</u> (<u>DOMString</u> qualifiedName);
       Attr? getAttributeNodeNS (DOMString? namespace, DOMString localName);
       [CEReactions] Attr? setAttributeNode(Attr attr);
       [CEReactions] Attr? setAttributeNodeNS(Attr attr);
       [CEReactions] Attr removeAttributeNode (Attr attr);
       ShadowRoot attachShadow(ShadowRootInit init);
       readonly attribute ShadowRoot? <a href="mailto:shadowRoot">shadowRoot</a>;
File an issue about the selected text
```

....

```
Element? closest(DOMString selectors);
boolean matches(DOMString selectors);
boolean webkitMatchesSelector(DOMString selectors); // historical alias of .matches

HTMLCollection getElementsByTagName(DOMString qualifiedName);
HTMLCollection getElementsByTagNameNS(DOMString? namespace, DOMString localName);
HTMLCollection getElementsBvClassName (DOMString classNames);

[CEReactions] Element? insertAdjacentElement(DOMString where, Element element); // historical undefined insertAdjacentText(DOMString where, DOMString data); // historical
};

dictionary ShadowRootInit {
    required ShadowRootMode mode;
    boolean delegatesFocus = false;
};
```

Element nodes are simply known as **elements**.

<u>Elements</u> have an associated **namespace**, **namespace prefix**, **local name**, **custom element state**, **custom element definition**, **is value**. When an <u>element</u> is <u>created</u>, all of these values are initialized.

An <u>element</u>' s <u>custom element state</u> is one of "undefined", "failed", "uncustomized", "precustomized", or "custom". An <u>element</u> whose <u>custom element state</u> is "uncustomized" or "custom" is said to be <u>defined</u>. An <u>element</u> whose <u>custom element state</u> is "custom" is said to be <u>custom</u>.

Note

Whether or not an element is <u>defined</u> is used to determine the behavior of the <u>:defined</u> pseudo-class. Whether or not an element is <u>custom</u> is used to determine the behavior of the <u>mutation algorithms</u>. The "failed" and "precustomized" states are used to ensure that if a <u>custom element constructor</u> fails to execute correctly the first time, it is not executed again by an <u>upgrade</u>.

Example

The following code illustrates elements in each of these four states:

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<script>
  window.customElements.define("sw-rey", class extends HTMLElement {})
  window.customElements.define("sw-finn", class extends HTMLElement {}, { extends: "p" })
  window.customElements.define("sw-kylo", class extends HTMLElement {
    constructor() {
       // super() intentionally omitted for this example
  })
</script>
<!-- "undefined" (not defined, not custom) -->
<sw-han></sw-han>
\langle p is = "sw-luke" \rangle \langle /p \rangle
\langle p is = "asdf" \rangle \langle /p \rangle
<!-- "failed" (not defined, not custom) -->
\langle sw-kylo \rangle \langle /sw-kylo \rangle
<!-- "uncustomized" (defined, not custom) -->
\langle p \rangle \langle /p \rangle
<asdf></asdf>
```

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 69/146

```
<!-- "custom" (defined, custom) -->
<sw-rey></sw-rey>

    is="sw-finn">
```

<u>Elements</u> also have an associated **shadow root** (null or a <u>shadow root</u>). It is null unless otherwise stated. An <u>element</u> is a **shadow host** if its <u>shadow root</u> is non-null.

An <u>element'</u> s **qualified name** is its <u>local name</u> if its <u>namespace prefix</u> is null, and its <u>namespace prefix</u>, followed by ":", followed by its <u>local name</u>, otherwise.

An element' s HTML-uppercased qualified name is the return value of these steps:

- 1. Let qualifiedName be this' s qualified name.
- 2. If <u>this</u> is in the <u>HTML namespace</u> and its <u>node document</u> is an <u>HTML document</u>, then set qualifiedName to qualifiedName in <u>ASCII uppercase</u>.
- 3. Return qualifiedName.

Note

User agents could optimize gualified name and HTML-uppercased qualified name by storing them in internal slots.

To **create an element**, given a document, localName, namespace, and optional prefix, is, and synchronous custom elements flag, run these steps:

- 1. If prefix was not given, let prefix be null.
- 2. If is was not given, let is be null.
- 3. Let result be null.
- 4. Let definition be the result of <u>looking up a custom element definition</u> given document, namespace, localName, and is.
- 5. If definition is non-null, and definition's <u>name</u> is not equal to its <u>local name</u> (i.e., definition represents a <u>customized built-in element</u>), then:
 - 1. Let interface be the <u>element interface</u> for localName and the <u>HTML namespace</u>.
 - 2. Set result to a new <u>element</u> that implements interface, with no attributes, <u>namespace</u> set to the <u>HTML namespace</u>, <u>namespace prefix</u> set to prefix, <u>local name</u> set to localName, <u>custom element state</u> set to "undefined", <u>custom element definition</u> set to null, <u>is value</u> set to is, and <u>node document</u> set to document.
 - 3. If the synchronous custom elements flag is set, then run this step while catching any exceptions:
 - 1. <u>Upgrade</u> element using definition.

If this step threw an exception, then:

- 1. Report the exception.
- 2. Set result' s custom element state to "failed".
- 4. Otherwise, enqueue a custom element upgrade reaction given result and definition.
- 6. Otherwise, if definition is non-null, then:
 - 1. If the synchronous custom elements flag is set, then run these steps while catching any exceptions:
 - 1. Let C be definition' s constructor.
 - 2. Set result to the result of constructing C, with no arguments.
 - 3. Assert: result' s custom element state and custom element definition are initialized.
 - 4. Assert: result' s <u>namespace</u> is the <u>HTML namespace</u>.

Note

IDL enforces that result is an HTML lement object, which all use the HTML lement object, which is the <a href="https://example.com/HTMLElement object, which is the <a href="https://example.com/HTML

- 5. If result's attribute list is not empty, then throw a "NotSupportedError" DOMException.
- 6. If result has <u>children</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "NotSupportedError" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 7. If result's parent is not null, then throw a "NotSupportedError" DOMException.
- 8. If result's <u>node document</u> is not document, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>NotSupportedError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 9. If result's local name is not equal to localName, then throw a "NotSupportedError" DOMException.
- 10. Set result' s namespace prefix to prefix.
- 11. Set result's <u>is value</u> to null.

If any of these steps threw an exception, then:

- 1. Report the exception.
- Set result to a new <u>element</u> that implements the <u>HTMLUnknownElement</u> interface, with no attributes, <u>namespace</u> set to the <u>HTML namespace</u>, <u>namespace prefix</u> set to prefix, <u>local name</u> set to localName, <u>custom element state</u> set to "failed", <u>custom element definition</u> set to null, <u>is value</u> set to null, and <u>node document</u> set to document.

2. Otherwise:

- Set result to a new <u>element</u> that implements the <u>HTMLElement</u> interface, with no attributes, <u>namespace</u> set to the <u>HTML namespace</u>, <u>namespace prefix</u> set to prefix, <u>local name</u> set to localName, <u>custom element state</u> set to "undefined", <u>custom element definition</u> set to null, <u>is value</u> set to null, and <u>node document</u> set to document.
- 2. Enqueue a custom element upgrade reaction given result and definition.

7. Otherwise:

- 1. Let interface be the <u>element interface</u> for localName and namespace.
- 2. Set result to a new <u>element</u> that implements interface, with no attributes, <u>namespace</u> set to namespace, <u>namespace prefix</u> set to prefix, <u>local name</u> set to localName, <u>custom element state</u> set to "uncustomized", <u>custom element definition</u> set to null, <u>is value</u> set to is, and <u>node document</u> set to document.
- 3. If namespace is the <u>HTML namespace</u>, and either localName is a <u>valid custom element name</u> or is is non-null, then set result's <u>custom element state</u> to "undefined".

8. Return result.

<u>Elements</u> also have an **attribute list**, which is a <u>list</u> exposed through a <u>NamedNodeMap</u>. Unless explicitly given when an <u>element</u> is created, its <u>attribute list is empty</u>.

An element has an attribute A if its attribute list contains A.

This and <u>other specifications</u> may define **attribute change steps** for <u>elements</u>. The algorithm is passed element, localName, oldValue, value, and namespace.

To handle attribute changes for an attribute attribute with element, oldValue, and newValue, run these steps:

- 1. Queue a mutation record of "attributes" for element with attribute's local name, attribute's namespace, oldValue, « », « », null, and null.
- 2. If element is <u>custom</u>, then <u>enqueue a custom element callback reaction</u> with element, callback name "attributeChangedCallback", and an argument list containing attribute' s <u>local name</u>, oldValue, newValue, and attribute' s <u>namespace</u>.
- 3. Run the <u>attribute change steps</u> with element, attribute's <u>local name</u>, oldValue, newValue, and attribute's <u>namespace</u>.

File an issue about the selected text lue, run these steps:

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 71/146

1. <u>Handle attribute changes</u> for attribute with attribute's <u>element</u>, attribute's <u>value</u>, and value.

2. Set attribute's value to value.

To **append** an <u>attribute</u> attribute to an <u>element</u> element, run these steps:

- 1. Handle attribute changes for attribute with element, null, and attribute' s value.
- 2. Append attribute to element's attribute list.
- 3. Set attribute' s element to element.

To **remove** an <u>attribute</u> attribute, run these steps:

- 1. Handle attribute changes for attribute with attribute's element, attribute's value, and null.
- 2. Remove attribute from attribute' s element' s attribute list.
- 3. Set attribute' s element to null.

To **replace** an <u>attribute</u> oldAttr with an <u>attribute</u> newAttr, run these steps:

- 1. Handle attribute changes for oldAttr with oldAttr' s element, oldAttr' s value, and newAttr' s value.
- 2. Replace oldAttr by newAttr in oldAttr's element's attribute list.
- 3. Set newAttr' s <u>element</u> to oldAttr' s <u>element</u>.
- 4. Set oldAttr's element to null.

To get an attribute by name given a qualifiedName and element, run these steps:

- 1. If element is in the <u>HTML namespace</u> and its <u>node document</u> is an <u>HTML document</u>, then set qualifiedName to qualifiedName in <u>ASCII lowercase</u>.
- 2. Return the first attribute in element's attribute list whose qualified name is qualifiedName, and null otherwise.

To get an attribute by namespace and local name given a namespace, localName, and element element, run these steps:

- 1. If namespace is the empty string, set it to null.
- 2. Return the <u>attribute</u> in element's <u>attribute list</u> whose <u>namespace</u> is namespace and <u>local name</u> is localName, if any, and null otherwise.

To **get an attribute value** given an <u>element</u> element, localName, and optionally a namespace (null unless stated otherwise), run these steps:

- 1. Let attr be the result of getting an attribute given namespace, localName, and element.
- 2. If attr is null, then return the empty string.
- 3. Return attr's value.

To **set an attribute** given an attr and element, run these steps:

- 1. If attr's <u>element</u> is neither null nor element, <u>throw</u> an "<u>InUseAttributeError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. Let oldAttr be the result of getting an attribute given attr's namespace, attr's local name, and element.
- 3. If oldAttr is attr, return attr.
- 4. If oldAttr is non-null, then replace oldAttr with attr.
- 5. Otherwise, append attr to element.
- 6. Return oldAttr.

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 72/146

To **set an attribute value** for an <u>element</u> element, using a localName and value, and an optional prefix, and namespace, run these steps:

- 1. If prefix is not given, set it to null.
- 2. If namespace is not given, set it to null.
- 3. Let attribute be the result of getting an attribute given namespace, localName, and element.
- 4. If attribute is null, create an <u>attribute</u> whose <u>namespace</u> is namespace, <u>namespace prefix</u> is prefix, <u>local name</u> is localName, <u>value</u> is value, and <u>node document</u> is element' s <u>node document</u>, then <u>append</u> this <u>attribute</u> to element, and then return.
- 5. Change attribute to value.

To remove an attribute by name given a qualifiedName and element, run these steps:

- 1. Let attr be the result of getting an attribute given qualifiedName and element.
- 2. If attr is non-null, then remove attr.
- 3. Return attr.

To **remove an attribute by namespace and local name** given a namespace, localName, and <u>element</u> element, run these steps:

- 1. Let attr be the result of getting an attribute given namespace, localName, and element.
- 2. If attr is non-null, then remove attr.
- 3. Return attr.

An element can have an associated unique identifier (ID)

Note

Historically <u>elements</u> could have multiple identifiers e.g., by using the HTML id <u>attribute</u> and a DTD. This specification makes <u>ID</u> a concept of the DOM and allows for only one per <u>element</u>, given by an <u>id attribute</u>.

Use these attribute change steps to update an element' s ID:

- 1. If localName is id, namespace is null, and value is null or the empty string, then unset element's <u>ID</u>.
- 2. Otherwise, if localName is id, namespace is null, then set element's \underline{ID} to value.

Note

While this specification defines requirements for class, id, and slot <u>attributes</u> on any <u>element</u>, it makes no claims as to whether using them is conforming or not.

A <u>node</u>' s <u>parent</u> of type <u>Element</u> is known as a **parent element**. If the <u>node</u> has a <u>parent</u> of a different type, its <u>parent</u> element is null.

For web developers (non-normative)

namespace = element . namespaceURI

Returns the <u>namespace</u>.

nrafiv - alamant profiv

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 73/146

Returns the namespace prefix.

```
localName = element . <a href="localName">localName</a>
```

Returns the local name.

```
qualifiedName = element . <a href="mailto:tagName">tagName</a>
```

Returns the HTML-uppercased qualified name.

The namespaceURI attribute's getter must return this's namespace.

The prefix attribute's getter must return this's namespace prefix.

The localName attribute's getter must return this's local name.

The tagName attribute's getter must return this's HTML-uppercased qualified name.



```
For web developers (non-normative)
```

```
element . id [ = value ]
```

Returns the value of element's id content attribute. Can be set to change it.

```
element . \underline{className} [ = value ]
```

Returns the value of element's class content attribute. Can be set to change it.

```
element . <u>classList</u>
```

Allows for manipulation of element's class content attribute as a set of whitespace-separated tokens through a DOMTokenList object.

```
element . \underline{slot} [ = value ]
```

Returns the value of element's slot content attribute. Can be set to change it.

IDL attributes that are defined to **reflect** a content <u>attribute</u> of a given name, must have a getter and setter that follow these steps:

getter

Return the result of running get an attribute value given this and name.

setter

Set an attribute value for this using name and the given value.

The id attribute must reflect the "id" content attribute.

The className attribute must reflect the "class" content attribute.



The classList attribute's getter must return a <u>DOMTokenList</u> object whose associated <u>element</u> is <u>this</u> and whose associated <u>attribute</u>'s <u>local name</u> is class. The <u>token set</u> of this particular <u>DOMTokenList</u> object are also known as the <u>element</u>'s **classes**.

The slot attribute must reflect the "slot" content attribute.

Note

id, class, and slot are effectively superglobal attributes as they can appear on any element, regardless of that element's namespace.

For web developers (non-normative)

```
element . <a href="mailto:hasAttributes">hasAttributes</a>()
```

Returns true if element has attributes, and false otherwise.

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 74/146

element . <u>getAttributeNames</u>()

Returns the <u>qualified names</u> of all element's <u>attributes</u>. Can contain duplicates.

element . getAttribute(qualifiedName)

Returns element's first <u>attribute</u> whose <u>qualified name</u> is qualifiedName, and null if there is no such <u>attribute</u> otherwise.

element . getAttributeNS(namespace, localName)

Returns element' s <u>attribute</u> whose <u>namespace</u> is namespace and <u>local name</u> is localName, and null if there is no such attribute otherwise.

element . setAttribute(qualifiedName, value)

Sets the value of element's first attribute whose qualified name is qualifiedName to value.

element . setAttributeNS (namespace, localName, value)

Sets the <u>value</u> of element' s <u>attribute</u> whose <u>namespace</u> is namespace and <u>local name</u> is localName to value.

element . removeAttribute (qualifiedName)

Removes element's first attribute whose gualified name is qualified Name.

element . removeAttributeNS (namespace, localName)

Removes element' s attribute whose namespace is namespace and local name is localName.

element . toggleAttribute (qualifiedName [, force])

If force is not given, "toggles" qualifiedName, removing it if it is present and adding it if it is not present. If force is true, adds qualifiedName. If force is false, removes qualifiedName.

Returns true if qualifiedName is now present, and false otherwise.

element . hasAttribute (qualifiedName)

Returns true if element has an attribute whose gualified name is qualifiedName, and false otherwise.

element . hasAttributeNS (namespace, localName)

Returns true if element has an attribute whose namespace is namespace and local name is localName.

The hasAttributes () method, when invoked, must return false if this' s attribute list is empty, and true otherwise.

The attributes attribute's getter must return the associated NamedNodeMap.

The getAttributeNames () method, when invoked, must return the <u>qualified names</u> of the <u>attributes</u> in <u>this</u>' s <u>attribute</u> list, in order, and a new <u>list</u> otherwise.

Note

These are not guaranteed to be unique.



The getAttribute (qualifiedName) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let attr be the result of getting an attribute given qualifiedName and this.
- 2. If attr is null, return null.
- 3. Return attr's value.

The getAttributeNS (namespace, localName) method, when invoked, must these steps:



- 1. Let attr be the result of getting an attribute given namespace, localName, and this.
- 2. If attr is null, return null.
- 3. Return attr's value.

The setAttribute (qualifiedName, value) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. If qualifiedName does not match the Name production in XML, then throw an "InvalidCharacterError" DOMException.
- 2. If this is in the HTML namespace and its <u>node document</u> is an <u>HTML document</u>, then set qualifiedName to <u>File an issue about the selected text</u> <u>ise</u>.

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 75/146

3. Let attribute be the first attribute in this' s attribute list whose qualified name is qualifiedName, and null otherwise.

- 4. If attribute is null, create an <u>attribute</u> whose <u>local name</u> is qualifiedName, <u>value</u> is value, and <u>node document</u> is <u>this</u>' s <u>node document</u>, then <u>append</u> this <u>attribute</u> to <u>this</u>, and then return.
- 5. Change attribute to value.

The setAttributeNS (namespace, qualifiedName, value) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. Let namespace, prefix, and localName be the result of passing namespace and qualifiedName to <u>validate and extract</u>.
- 2. Set an attribute value for this using localName, value, and also prefix and namespace.

The removeAttribute (qualifiedName) method, when invoked, must remove an attribute given qualifiedName and this, and then return undefined.

The removeAttributeNS (namespace, localName) method, when invoked, must <u>remove an attribute</u> given namespace, localName, and <u>this</u>, and then return undefined.

The hasAttribute (qualifiedName) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If <u>this</u> is in the <u>HTML namespace</u> and its <u>node document</u> is an <u>HTML document</u>, then set qualifiedName to qualifiedName in <u>ASCII lowercase</u>.
- 2. Return true if this has an attribute whose qualified name is qualifiedName, and false otherwise.

The toggleAttribute (qualifiedName, force) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. If qualifiedName does not match the Name production in XML, then throw an "InvalidCharacterError" DOMException.
- 2. If <u>this</u> is in the <u>HTML namespace</u> and its <u>node document</u> is an <u>HTML document</u>, then set qualifiedName to qualifiedName in <u>ASCII lowercase</u>.
- 3. Let attribute be the first attribute in this' s attribute list whose gualified name is qualified Name, and null otherwise.
- 4. If attribute is null, then:
 - 1. If force is not given or is true, create an <u>attribute</u> whose <u>local name</u> is qualifiedName, <u>value</u> is the empty string, and <u>node document</u> is <u>this</u>' s <u>node document</u>, then <u>append</u> this <u>attribute</u> to <u>this</u>, and then return true.
 - 2. Return false.
- 5. Otherwise, if force is not given or is false, <u>remove an attribute</u> given qualifiedName and <u>this</u>, and then return false.
- 6. Return true.

The hasAttributeNS (namespace, localName) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. If namespace is the empty string, set it to null.
- 2. Return true if <u>this has</u> an <u>attribute</u> whose <u>namespace</u> is namespace and <u>local name</u> is localName, and false otherwise.

The getAttributeNode (qualifiedName) method, when invoked, must return the result of getting an attribute given qualifiedName and this.

The getAttributeNodeNS (namespace, localName) method, when invoked, must return the result of getting an attribute given namespace, localName, and this.

The setAttributeNode(attr) and setAttributeNodeNS(attr) methods, when invoked, must return the result of setting an attribute given attr and this.

File an issue about the selected text thod, when invoked, must run these steps:

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 76/146

1. If this' s attribute list does not contain attr, then throw a "NotFoundError" DOMException.

- 2. Remove attr.
- 3. Return attr.

For web developers (non-normative)

var shadow = element . attachShadow(init)

Creates a shadow root for element and returns it.

var shadow = element . shadowRoot

Returns element's shadow root, if any, and if shadow root's mode is "open", and null otherwise.

The attachShadow(init) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. If this' s namespace is not the HTML namespace, then throw a "NotSupportedError" DOMException.
- 2. If this' s local name is not one of the following:
 - a valid custom element name
 "article", "aside", "blockquote", "body", "div", "footer", "h1", "h2", "h3", "h4", "h5", "h6", "header", "main", "nav", "p", "section", Or "span"

then throw a "NotSupportedError" DOMException.

- 3. If this' s local name is a valid custom element name, or this' s is value is not null, then:
 - 1. Let definition be the result of <u>looking up a custom element definition</u> given <u>this</u>' s <u>node document</u>, its <u>namespace</u>, its <u>local name</u>, and its <u>is value</u>.
 - 2. If definition is not null and definition's <u>disable shadow</u> is true, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>NotSupportedError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 4. If this is a shadow host, then throw an "NotSupportedError" DOMException.
- 5. Let shadow be a new <u>shadow root</u> whose <u>node document</u> is <u>this</u>' s <u>node document</u>, <u>host</u> is <u>this</u>, and <u>mode</u> is init' s <u>mode</u>.
- 6. Set shadow's delegates focus to init's delegates Focus.
- 7. If <u>this</u>'s <u>custom element state</u> is "precustomized" or "custom", then set shadow's <u>available to element internals</u> to true.
- 8. Set this' s shadow root to shadow.
- 9. Return shadow.

The shadowRoot attribute' s getter must run these steps:



- 1. Let shadow be this' s shadow root.
- 2. If shadow is null or its <u>mode</u> is "closed", then return null.
- 3. Return shadow.

```
For web developers (non-normative)
```

```
element . \frac{\text{closest(selectors)}}{\text{closest(selectors)}}
```

Returns the first (starting at element) inclusive ancestor that matches selectors, and null otherwise.

element . matches(selectors)

Returns true if matching selectors against element's <u>root</u> yields element, and false otherwise.

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 77/146

The closest (selectors) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. Let s be the result of <u>parse a selector</u> from selectors. [SELECTORS4]
- 2. If s is failure, throw a "SyntaxError" DOMException.
- 3. Let elements be this' s inclusive ancestors that are elements, in reverse tree order.
- 4. For each element in elements, if <u>match a selector against an element</u>, using s, element, and <u>:scope element this</u>, returns success, return element. [SELECTORS4]
- 5. Return null.

The matches (selectors) and webkitMatchesSelector (selectors) methods, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let s be the result of <u>parse a selector</u> from selectors. [SELECTORS4]
- 2. If s is failure, throw a "SyntaxError" DOMException.
- 3. Return true if the result of <u>match a selector against an element</u>, using s, element, and <u>:scope element this</u>, returns success, and false otherwise. [<u>SELECTORS4</u>]

The getElementsByTagName (qualifiedName) method, when invoked, must return the <u>list of elements with qualified name qualifiedName</u> for <u>this</u>.

The getElementsByTagNameNS (namespace, localName) method, when invoked, must return the <u>list of elements with namespace namespace and local name localName</u> for <u>this</u>.

The getElementsByClassName (classNames) method, when invoked, must return the <u>list of elements with class names</u> <u>classNames</u> for <u>this</u>.

To **insert adjacent**, given an <u>element</u> element, string where, and a <u>node</u> node, run the steps associated with the first <u>ASCII</u> <u>case-insensitive</u> match for where:

⇔ "beforebegin"

If element's parent is null, return null.

Return the result of <u>pre-inserting</u> node into element's <u>parent</u> before element.

→ "afterbegin"

Return the result of <u>pre-inserting</u> node into element before element' s <u>first child</u>.

↔ "beforeend"

Return the result of pre-inserting node into element before null.

→ "afterend"

If element's parent is null, return null.

Return the result of <u>pre-inserting</u> node into element' s <u>parent</u> before element' s <u>next sibling</u>.

→ Otherwise

Throw a "SyntaxError" DOMException.

The insertAdjacentElement (where, element) method, when invoked, must return the result of running insert adjacent, give this, where, and element.

The insertAdjacentText (where, data) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

1 Let tout be a now Text node whose <u>data</u> is data and <u>node document</u> is <u>this</u>' s <u>node document</u>. File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 78/146

2. Run insert adjacent, given this, where, and text.

Note

This method returns nothing because it existed before we had a chance to design it.

4.9.1. Interface NamedNodeMap §



A NamedNodeMap has an associated element (an element).

A NamedNodeMap object' s attribute list is its element' s attribute list.

A <u>NamedNodeMap</u> object' s <u>supported property indices</u> are the numbers in the range zero to its <u>attribute list</u>' s <u>size</u> minus one, unless the <u>attribute list</u> is <u>empty</u>, in which case there are no <u>supported property indices</u>.

The length attribute's getter must return the attribute list's size.

The item(index) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If index is equal to or greater than this' s attribute list' s size, then return null.
- 2. Otherwise, return this' s attribute list[index].

A NamedNodeMap object's supported property names are the return value of running these steps:

- 1. Let names be the <u>qualified names</u> of the <u>attributes</u> in this <u>NamedNodeMap</u> object' s <u>attribute list</u>, with duplicates omitted, in order.
- 2. If this <u>NamedNodeMap</u> object' s <u>element</u> is in the <u>HTML namespace</u> and its <u>node document</u> is an <u>HTML document</u>, then <u>for each</u> name in names:
 - 1. Let lowercaseName be name, in ASCII lowercase.
 - 2. If lowercaseName is not equal to name, remove name from names.
- 3. Return names.

The getNamedItem(qualifiedName) method, when invoked, must return the result of getting an attribute given qualifiedName and element.

The getNamedItemNS (namespace, localName) method, when invoked, must return the result of getting an attribute given namespace, localName, and element.

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 79/146

The setNamedItem(attr) and setNamedItemNS(attr) methods, when invoked, must return the result of setting an attribute given attr and element.

The removeNamedItem(qualifiedName) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let attr be the result of removing an attribute given qualifiedName and element.
- 2. If attr is null, then throw a "NotFoundError" DOMException.
- 3. Return attr.

The removeNamedItemNS (namespace, localName) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. Let attr be the result of removing an attribute given namespace, localName, and element.
- 2. If attr is null, then throw a "NotFoundError" DOMException.
- 3. Return attr.

4.9.2. Interface Attr §



```
ID    [Exposed=Window]
L    interface Attr : Node {
    readonly attribute DOMString? namespaceURI;
    readonly attribute DOMString? prefix;
    readonly attribute DOMString localName;
    readonly attribute DOMString name;
    [CEReactions] attribute DOMString value;

    readonly attribute Element? ownerElement;

    readonly attribute boolean specified; // useless; always returns true
};
```

Attr nodes are simply known as attributes. They are sometimes referred to as content attributes to avoid confusion with IDL attributes.

<u>Attributes</u> have a **namespace** (null or a non-empty string), **namespace prefix** (null or a non-empty string), **local name** (a non-empty string), **value** (a string), and **element** (null or an <u>element</u>).

Note

If designed today they would just have a name and value. ②

An <u>attribute</u>' s **qualified name** is its <u>local name</u> if its <u>namespace prefix</u> is null, and its <u>namespace prefix</u>, followed by ":", followed by its <u>local name</u>, otherwise.

Note

User agents could have this as an internal slot as an optimization.

When an <u>attribute</u> is created, its <u>local name</u> is given. Unless explicitly given when an <u>attribute</u> is created, its <u>namespace</u>, <u>namespace prefix</u>, and <u>element</u> are set to null, and its <u>value</u> is set to the empty string.

An A attribute is an attribute whose local name is A and whose namespace and namespace prefix are null.



must return the <u>namespace</u>.

The prefix attribute's getter must return the <u>namespace prefix</u>.



The localName attribute's getter must return the local name.

The name attribute's getter must return the qualified name.

The value attribute' s getter must return the value.

To **set an existing attribute value**, given an <u>attribute</u> attribute and string value, run these steps:

- 1. If attribute' s <u>element</u> is null, then set attribute' s <u>value</u> to value.
- 2. Otherwise, change attribute to value.

The value attribute' s setter must set an existing attribute value with this and the given value.

The ownerElement attribute's getter must return this's element.

The specified attribute's getter must return true.

4.10. Interface CharacterData §

```
✓ MDN
```

```
ID    [Exposed=Window]
    interface CharacterData : Node {
        attribute [LegacyNullToEmptyString] DOMString data;
        readonly attribute unsigned long length;
        DOMString substringData(unsigned long offset, unsigned long count);
        undefined appendData(DOMString data);
        undefined insertData(unsigned long offset, DOMString data);
        undefined deleteData(unsigned long offset, unsigned long count);
        undefined replaceData(unsigned long offset, unsigned long count, DOMString data);
    };
```

Note

<u>CharacterData</u> is an abstract interface and does not exist as <u>node</u>. It is used by <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, and <u>Comment nodes</u>.

Each <u>node</u> inheriting from the <u>CharacterData</u> interface has an associated mutable string called **data**.

To **replace data** of node node with offset offset, count count, and data data, run these steps:

- 1. Let length be node's length.
- 2. If offset is greater than length, then throw an "IndexSizeError" DOMException.
- 3. If offset plus count is greater than length, then set count to length minus offset.
- 4. Queue a mutation record of "characterData" for node with null, null, node' s data, « », « », null, and null.
- 5. Insert data into node's <u>data</u> after offset <u>code units</u>.
- 6. Let delete offset be offset + data' s length.

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 81/146

7. Starting from delete offset code units, remove count code units from node's data.

- 8. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>start node</u> is node and <u>start offset</u> is greater than offset but less than or equal to offset plus count, set its <u>start offset</u> to offset.
- 9. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>end node</u> is node and <u>end offset</u> is greater than offset but less than or equal to offset plus count, set its <u>end offset</u> to offset.
- 10. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>start node</u> is node and <u>start offset</u> is greater than offset plus count, increase its <u>start</u> <u>offset</u> by data' s <u>length</u> and decrease it by count.
- 11. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>end node</u> is node and <u>end offset</u> is greater than offset plus count, increase its <u>end offset</u> by data' s <u>length</u> and decrease it by count.
- 12. If node's parent is non-null, then run the children changed steps for node's parent.

To **substring data** with node node, offset offset, and count count, run these steps:

- 1. Let length be node' s length.
- 2. If offset is greater than length, then throw an "DOMException.
- 3. If offset plus count is greater than length, return a string whose value is the <u>code units</u> from the offsetth <u>code unit</u> to the end of node' s <u>data</u>, and then return.
- 4. Return a string whose value is the <u>code units</u> from the offsetth <u>code unit</u> to the offset+countth <u>code unit</u> in node' s <u>data</u>.

The data attribute's getter must return this's data. Its setter must replace data with node this, offset 0, count this's length, and data new value.

The length attribute' s getter must return this' s length.

The <u>substringData(offset, count)</u> method, when invoked, must return the result of running <u>substring data</u> with node <u>this</u>, offset offset, and count count.

The appendData (data) method, when invoked, must <u>replace data</u> with node <u>this</u>, offset <u>this</u>' s <u>length</u>, count 0, and data

The insertData (offset, data) method, when invoked, must <u>replace data</u> with node <u>this</u>, offset offset, count 0, and data data.

The deleteData(offset, count) method, when invoked, must <u>replace data</u> with node <u>this</u>, offset offset, count count, and data the empty string.

The replaceData (offset, count, data) method, when invoked, must replace data with node this, offset offset, count count, and data data.

4.11. Interface Text §

```
✓ MDN
```

```
[Exposed=Window]
interface Text : CharacterData {
    constructor(optional DOMString data = "");

[NewObject] Text splitText(unsigned long offset);
    readonly attribute DOMString wholeText;
};
```

For web developers (non-normative)

tart = naw Tart ([data = ""])

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 82/146

Returns a new <u>Text</u> <u>node</u> whose <u>data</u> is data.

```
text . <u>splitText(offset)</u>
```

Splits <u>data</u> at the given offset and returns the remainder as <u>Text</u> <u>node</u>.

```
text . wholeText
```

Returns the combined <u>data</u> of all direct <u>Text</u> <u>node siblings</u>.

An **exclusive** <u>Text</u> **node** is a <u>Text</u> <u>node</u> that is not a <u>CDATASection</u> <u>node</u>.

The **contiguous** <u>Text</u> **nodes** of a <u>node</u> node are node, node's <u>previous sibling</u> <u>Text</u> <u>node</u>, if any, and its <u>contiguous</u> <u>Text</u> <u>nodes</u>, and node's <u>nodes</u>, and nodes <u>nodes</u>, and node's <u>nodes</u>, and nodes <u>nodes</u>, and node's <u>nodes</u>, and nodes <u>nodes</u>, and nodes <u>nodes</u>, and nodes <u>nodes</u>, and nodes <u>nodes</u>, anode <u>nodes</u>, and nodes <u>nodes</u>, and nodes <u>nodes</u>, and nodes <u>nod</u>

The **contiguous exclusive** <u>Text</u> **nodes** of a <u>node</u> node are node, node' s <u>previous sibling exclusive Text node</u>, if any, and its <u>contiguous exclusive Text nodes</u>, and node' s <u>next sibling exclusive Text node</u>, if any, and its <u>contiguous exclusive Text nodes</u>, avoiding any duplicates.

The **child text content** of a <u>node</u> node is the <u>concatenation</u> of the <u>data</u> of all the <u>Text node children</u> of node, in <u>tree order</u>.

The **descendant text content** of a <u>node</u> node is the <u>concatenation</u> of the <u>data</u> of all the <u>Text</u> <u>node descendants</u> of node, in <u>tree order</u>.

The Text (data) constructor, when invoked, must return a new <u>Text node</u> whose <u>data</u> is data and <u>node document</u> is <u>current global object'</u> s <u>associated Document</u>.

To **split** a <u>Text</u> <u>node</u> node with offset offset, run these steps:

- 1. Let length be node's length.
- 2. If offset is greater than length, then throw an "DOMException.
- 3. Let count be length minus offset.
- 4. Let new data be the result of <u>substringing data</u> with node node, offset offset, and count count.
- 5. Let new node be a new Text node, with the same node document as node. Set new node's data to new data.
- 6. Let parent be node's parent.
- 7. If parent is not null, then:
 - 1. <u>Insert</u> new node into parent before node' s <u>next sibling</u>.
 - 2. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>start node</u> is node and <u>start offset</u> is greater than offset, set its <u>start node</u> to new node and decrease its <u>start offset</u> by offset.
 - 3. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>end node</u> is node and <u>end offset</u> is greater than offset, set its <u>end node</u> to new node and decrease its <u>end offset</u> by offset.
 - 4. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>start node</u> is parent and <u>start offset</u> is equal to the <u>index</u> of node plus 1, increase its <u>start offset</u> by 1.
 - 5. For each <u>live range</u> whose <u>end node</u> is parent and <u>end offset</u> is equal to the <u>index</u> of node plus 1, increase its <u>end offset</u> by 1.
- 8. Replace data with node node, offset offset, count count, and data the empty string.
- 9. Return new node.

The splitText (offset) method, when invoked, must split this with offset offset.

✓ MDN ✓ MDN

The wholeText attribute's getter must return the <u>concatenation</u> of the <u>data</u> of the <u>contiguous Text nodes</u> of <u>this</u>, in <u>tree</u> <u>order</u>.

4.12. Interface CDATASection §

```
✓ MDN
```

4.13. Interface ProcessingInstruction

```
✓ MDN
```

```
[Exposed=Window]
L interface ProcessingInstruction : CharacterData {
    readonly attribute DOMString target;
};
```

ProcessingInstruction nodes have an associated target.

The target attribute must return the target.

4.14. Interface Comment §

```
✓ MDN
```

```
For web developers (non-normative)
```

```
comment = new Comment([data = ""])
```

Returns a new **Comment** node whose data is data.

The Comment (data) constructor, when invoked, must return a new Comment node whose data is data and node document is current global object's associated Document.

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 84/146

5. Ranges §

5.1. Introduction to "DOM Ranges" §

<u>StaticRange</u> and <u>Range</u> objects (<u>ranges</u>) represent a sequence of content within a <u>node tree</u>. Each <u>range</u> has a <u>start</u> and an <u>end</u> which are <u>boundary points</u>. A <u>boundary point</u> is a <u>tuple</u> consisting of a <u>node</u> and an <u>offset</u>. So in other words, a <u>range</u> represents a piece of content within a <u>node tree</u> between two <u>boundary points</u>.

Ranges are frequently used in editing for selecting and copying content.

```
Lelement: p

Element: <img src="insanity-wolf" alt="Little-endian BOM; decode as big-endian!">

Text: CSS 2.1 syndata is

Element: <em>
Lendian BOM; decode as big-endian!">

Text: awesome

Text:!
```

In the <u>node tree</u> above, a <u>range</u> can be used to represent the sequence "syndata is awes". Assuming p is assigned to the p <u>element</u>, and em to the em <u>element</u>, this would be done as follows:

```
var range = new Range(),
    firstText = p.childNodes[1],
    secondText = em.firstChild
range.setStart(firstText, 9) // do not forget the leading space
range.setEnd(secondText, 4)
// range now stringifies to the aforementioned quote
```

Note

<u>Attributes</u> such as src and alt in the <u>node tree</u> above cannot be represented by a <u>range</u>. <u>Ranges</u> are only useful for <u>nodes</u>.

Range objects, unlike StaticRange objects, are affected by mutations to the node tree. Therefore they are also known as live ranges. Such mutations will not invalidate them and will try to ensure that it still represents the same piece of content. Necessarily, a live range might itself be modified as part of the mutation to the node tree when, e.g., part of the content it represents is mutated.

Note

See the <u>insert</u> and <u>remove</u> algorithms, the <u>normalize()</u> method, and the <u>replace data</u> and <u>split</u> algorithms for details.

Updating <u>live ranges</u> in response to <u>node tree</u> mutations can be expensive. For every <u>node tree</u> change, all affected <u>Range</u> objects need to be updated. Even if the application is uninterested in some <u>live ranges</u>, it still has to pay the cost of keeping them up-to-date when a mutation occurs.

A <u>StaticRange</u> object is a lightweight <u>range</u> that does not update when the <u>node tree</u> mutates. It is therefore not subject to the same maintenance cost as <u>live ranges</u>.

5.2. Boundary points §

A **boundary point** is a <u>tuple</u> consisting of a **node** (a <u>node</u>) and an **offset** (a non-negative integer).

Note

File an issue about the selected text vill be between 0 and the boundary point's node's length, inclusive.

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 85/146

The **position** of a <u>boundary point</u> (nodeA, offsetA) relative to a <u>boundary point</u> (nodeB, offsetB) is **before**, **equal**, or **after**, as returned by these steps:

- 1. Assert: nodeA and nodeB have the same root.
- 2. If nodeA is nodeB, then return <u>equal</u> if offsetA is offsetB, <u>before</u> if offsetA is less than offsetB, and <u>after</u> if offsetA is greater than offsetB.
- 3. If nodeA is <u>following</u> nodeB, then if the <u>position</u> of (nodeB, offsetB) relative to (nodeA, offsetA) is <u>before</u>, return <u>after</u>, and if it is <u>after</u>, return <u>before</u>.
- 4. If nodeA is an ancestor of nodeB:
 - 1. Let child be nodeB.
 - 2. While child is not a child of nodeA, set child to its parent.
 - 3. If child's index is less than offsetA, then return after.
- 5. Return before.

5.3. Interface AbstractRange §



```
[Exposed=Window]
interface AbstractRange {
    readonly attribute Node startContainer;
    readonly attribute unsigned long startOffset;
    readonly attribute Node endContainer;
    readonly attribute unsigned long endOffset;
    readonly attribute boolean collapsed;
};
```

Objects implementing the AbstractRange interface are known as ranges.

A <u>range</u> has two associated <u>boundary points</u> — a **start** and **end**.

For convenience, a <u>range</u>' s **start node** is its <u>start</u>' s <u>node</u>, its **start offset** is its <u>start</u>' s <u>offset</u>, its <u>end node</u> is its <u>end</u>' s <u>node</u>, and its <u>end</u> offset is its <u>end</u>' s <u>offset</u>.

A range is collapsed if its start node is its end node and its start offset is its end offset.

```
For web developers (non-normative)

node = range . startContainer

Returns range' s start node.

offset = range . startOffset

Returns range' s start offset.

node = range . endContainer

Returns range' s end node.

offset = range . endOffset

Returns range' s end offset.

collapsed = range . collapsed

Returns true if range is collapsed, and false otherwise.
```

The startContainer attribute's getter must return this's start node.

↑ MDN ↑ MDN ↑ MDN

File an issue about the selected text nust return this' s start offset.

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 86/146

The endContainer attribute's getter must return this's end node.

The endOffset attribute' s getter must return this' s end offset.





```
5.4. Interface <a href="StaticRange">StaticRange</a>
```

```
✓ MDN
```

```
dictionary StaticRangeInit {
    required Node startContainer;
    required unsigned long startOffset;
    required Node endContainer;
    required unsigned long endOffset;
};

[Exposed=Window]
interface StaticRange : AbstractRange {
    constructor(StaticRangeInit init);
};
```

For web developers (non-normative)

```
staticRange = new <u>StaticRange(init)</u>
```

Returns a new <u>range</u> object that does not update when the <u>node tree</u> mutates.

The StaticRange (init) constructor, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. If init's <u>startContainer</u> or <u>endContainer</u> is a <u>DocumentType</u> or <u>Attr node</u>, then <u>throw</u> an "<u>InvalidNodeTypeError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. Let staticRange be a new StaticRange object.
- 3. Set staticRange's <u>start</u> to (init's <u>startContainer</u>, init's <u>startOffset</u>) and <u>end</u> to (init's <u>endContainer</u>, init's <u>endOffset</u>).
- 4. Return staticRange.

5.5. Interface Range §

✓ MDN

```
ID    [Exposed=Window]
interface Range : AbstractRange {
    constructor();

    readonly attribute Node commonAncestorContainer;

    undefined setStart(Node node, unsigned long offset);
    undefined setEnd(Node node, unsigned long offset);
    undefined setStartBefore(Node node);
    undefined setStartAfter(Node node);
    undefined setEndBefore(Node node);
    undefined setEndBefore(Node node);
    undefined setEndAfter(Node node);
    undefined collapse(optional boolean toStart = false);
File an issue about the selected text ;);
```

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 87/146

```
undefined selectNodeContents(Node node);
const unsigned short START_TO_START = 0;
const unsigned short START_TO_END = 1;
const unsigned short END_TO_END = 2;
const unsigned short END_TO_START = 3;
short compareBoundaryPoints (unsigned short how, Range sourceRange);
[CEReactions] undefined deleteContents();
[CEReactions, NewObject] DocumentFragment extractContents();
[CEReactions, NewObject] DocumentFragment cloneContents();
[CEReactions] undefined insertNode (Node node);
[CEReactions] undefined surroundContents(Node newParent);
[NewObject] Range cloneRange();
undefined detach();
<u>boolean isPointInRange (Node node, unsigned long offset);</u>
short comparePoint(Node node, unsigned long offset);
boolean intersectsNode(Node node);
stringifier;
```

Objects implementing the **Range** interface are known as **live ranges**.

Note

Algorithms that modify a <u>tree</u> (in particular the <u>insert</u>, <u>remove</u>, <u>replace data</u>, and <u>split</u> algorithms) modify <u>live ranges</u> associated with that <u>tree</u>.

The **root** of a <u>live range</u> is the <u>root</u> of its <u>start node</u>.

A <u>node</u> node is **contained** in a <u>live range</u> range if node' s <u>root</u> is range' s <u>root</u>, and (node, 0) is <u>after</u> range' s <u>start</u>, and (node, node' s <u>length</u>) is <u>before</u> range' s <u>end</u>.

A <u>node</u> is **partially contained** in a <u>live range</u> if it' s an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of the <u>live range</u>' s <u>start node</u> but not its <u>end</u> <u>node</u>, or vice versa.

Note

Some facts to better understand these definitions:

- The content that one would think of as being within the <u>live range</u> consists of all <u>contained nodes</u>, plus possibly some of the contents of the <u>start node</u> and <u>end node</u> if those are <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, or <u>Comment nodes</u>.
- The <u>nodes</u> that are contained in a <u>live range</u> will generally not be contiguous, because the <u>parent</u> of a <u>contained</u> <u>node</u> will not always be <u>contained</u>.
- However, the <u>descendants</u> of a <u>contained</u> <u>node</u> are <u>contained</u>, and if two <u>siblings</u> are <u>contained</u>, so are any <u>siblings</u> that lie between them.
- The <u>start node</u> and <u>end node</u> of a <u>live range</u> are never <u>contained</u> within it.
- The first <u>contained node</u> (if there are any) will always be after the <u>start node</u>, and the last <u>contained node</u> will always be equal to or before the <u>end node</u>' s last <u>descendant</u>.
- There exists a partially contained node if and only if the start node and end node are different.

attribute value is neither contained nor partially contained.

File an issue about the selected text

- If the <u>start node</u> is an <u>ancestor</u> of the <u>end node</u>, the common <u>inclusive ancestor</u> will be the <u>start node</u>. Exactly one of its <u>children</u> will be <u>partially contained</u>, and a <u>child</u> will be <u>contained</u> if and only if it <u>precedes</u> the <u>partially contained child</u>. If the <u>end node</u> is an <u>ancestor</u> of the <u>start node</u>, the opposite holds.
- If the <u>start node</u> is not an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of the <u>end node</u>, nor vice versa, the common <u>inclusive ancestor</u> will be distinct from both of them. Exactly two of its <u>children</u> will be <u>partially contained</u>, and a <u>child</u> will be contained if and only if it lies between those two.

For web developers (non-normative)

range = new <u>Range()</u>

Returns a new live range.

The Range () constructor, when invoked, must return a new <u>live range</u> with (<u>current global object</u>' s <u>associated Document</u>, 0) as its <u>start</u> and <u>end</u>.

For web developers (non-normative)

container = range . commonAncestorContainer

Returns the <u>node</u>, furthest away from the <u>document</u>, that is an <u>ancestor</u> of both range' s <u>start node</u> and <u>end node</u>.

The commonAncestorContainer attribute' s getter must run these steps:

✓ MDN

- 1. Let container be start node.
- 2. While container is not an inclusive ancestor of end node, let container be container's parent.
- 3. Return container.

To **set the start or end** of a range to a <u>boundary point</u> (node, offset), run these steps:

- 1. If node is a <u>doctype</u>, then <u>throw</u> an "<u>InvalidNodeTypeError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. If offset is greater than node's <u>length</u>, then <u>throw</u> an "<u>IndexSizeError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 3. Let bp be the <u>boundary point</u> (node, offset).
- 4.
 → If these steps were invoked as "set the start"
 - 1. If bp is <u>after</u> the range's <u>end</u>, or if range's <u>root</u> is not equal to node's <u>root</u>, set range's <u>end</u> to bp.
 - 2. Set range's start to bp.
 - → If these steps were invoked as "set the end"
 - 1. If bp is <u>before</u> the range's <u>start</u>, or if range's <u>root</u> is not equal to node's <u>root</u>, set range's <u>start</u> to bp.
 - 2. Set range's end to bp.

The setStart (node, offset) method, when invoked, must set the start of this to boundary point (node, offset).

The setEnd (node, offset) method, when invoked, must set the end of this to boundary point (node, offset).

The setStartBefore (node) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

1. Let parent be node's parent.

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 89/146

2. If parent is null, then throw an "<a href="mailto:InvalidNodeTypeError" DOMException." DOMException.

3. Set the start of this to boundary point (parent, node' s index).

The setStartAfter (node) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. Let parent be node's parent.
- 2. If parent is null, then <u>throw</u> an "<u>InvalidNodeTypeError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 3. Set the start of this to boundary point (parent, node's index plus 1).

The setEndBefore (node), when invoked, method must run these steps:



- 1. Let parent be node' s parent.
- 2. If parent is null, then throw an "DOMException.
- 3. Set the end of this to boundary point (parent, node's index).

The setEndAfter (node) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. Let parent be node' s parent.
- 2. If parent is null, then throw an "DOMException.
- 3. Set the end of this to boundary point (parent, node' s index plus 1).

The collapse (toStart) method, when invoked, must if toStart is true, set end to start, and set start to end otherwise.

To **select** a <u>node</u> node within a <u>range</u> range, run these steps:

- 1. Let parent be node' s parent.
- 2. If parent is null, then throw an "InvalidNodeTypeError" DOMException.
- 3. Let index be node's index.
- 4. Set range' s start to boundary point (parent, index).
- 5. Set range' s <u>end</u> to <u>boundary point</u> (parent, index plus 1).

The selectNode (node) method, when invoked, must select node within this.



The selectNodeContents (node) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If node is a <u>doctype</u>, <u>throw</u> an "<u>InvalidNodeTypeError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. Let length be the length of node.
- 3. Set start to the boundary point (node, 0).
- 4. Set end to the boundary point (node, length).

The compareBoundaryPoints (how, sourceRange) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. If how is not one of

 - END TO END, and

then throw a "NotSupportedError" DOMException.

2. If this' s root is not the same as sourceRange' s root, then throw a "WrongDocumentError" DOMException.

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 90/146

Let this point be this' s start. Let other point be sourceRange' s start.

Let this point be this' s end. Let other point be sourceRange' s start.

Let this point be this' s end. Let other point be sourceRange' s end.

Let this point be this' s start. Let other point be sourceRange' s end.

- 4. If the position of this point relative to other point is
 - **→ before**

Return -1.

<u>equal</u>

Return 0.

→ after

Return 1.

The deleteContents () method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. If this is collapsed, then return.
- 2. Let original start node, original start offset, original end node, and original end offset be <u>this</u>' s <u>start node</u>, <u>start node</u>, <u>start node</u>, and <u>end offset</u>, respectively.
- 3. If original start node and original end node are the same, and they are a <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, or <u>Comment node</u>, <u>replace data</u> with node original start node, offset original start offset, count original end offset minus original start offset, and data the empty string, and then return.
- 4. Let nodes to remove be a list of all the <u>nodes</u> that are <u>contained</u> in <u>this</u>, in <u>tree order</u>, omitting any <u>node</u> whose <u>parent</u> is also <u>contained</u> in <u>this</u>.
- 5. If original start node is an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of original end node, set new node to original start node and new offset to original start offset.
- 6. Otherwise:
 - 1. Let reference node equal original start node.
 - 2. While reference node's <u>parent</u> is not null and is not an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of original end node, set reference node to its <u>parent</u>.
 - 3. Set new node to the <u>parent</u> of reference node, and new offset to one plus the <u>index</u> of reference node.

Note

If reference node's <u>parent</u> were null, it would be the <u>root</u> of <u>this</u>, so would be an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of original end node, and we could not reach this point.

- 7. If original start node is a <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, or <u>Comment node</u>, <u>replace data</u> with node original start node, offset original start offset, count original start node's <u>length</u> minus original start offset, data the empty string.
- 8. For each node in nodes to remove, in tree order, remove node.
- 9. If original end node is a <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, or <u>Comment node</u>, <u>replace data</u> with node original end node, offset 0, count original end offset and data the empty string.
- 10. Set start and end to (new node, new offset).

To **extract** a <u>live range</u> range, run these steps:

- 1. Let fragment be a new <u>DocumentFragment node</u> whose <u>node document</u> is range' s <u>start node</u>' s <u>node document</u>.
- 2. If range is <u>collapsed</u>, then return fragment.
- 3. Let original start node, original start offset, original end node, and original end offset be range's <u>start node</u>, <u>start no</u>

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 91/146

- 4. If original start node is original end node, and they are a <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, or <u>Comment</u> <u>node</u>:
 - 1. Let clone be a <u>clone</u> of original start node.
 - 2. Set the <u>data</u> of clone to the result of <u>substringing data</u> with node original start node, offset original start offset, and count original end offset minus original start offset.
 - 3. Append clone to fragment.
 - 4. Replace data with node original start node, offset original start offset, count original end offset minus original start offset, and data the empty string.
 - 5. Return fragment.
- 5. Let common ancestor be original start node.
- 6. While common ancestor is not an inclusive ancestor of original end node, set common ancestor to its own parent.
- 7. Let first partially contained child be null.
- 8. If original start node is not an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of original end node, set first partially contained child to the first <u>child</u> of common ancestor that is <u>partially contained</u> in range.
- 9. Let last partially contained child be null.
- 10. If original end node is not an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of original start node, set last partially contained child to the last <u>child</u> of common ancestor that is <u>partially contained</u> in range.

Note

These variable assignments do actually always make sense. For instance, if original start node is not an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of original end node, original start node is itself <u>partially contained</u> in range, and so are all its <u>ancestors</u> up until a <u>child</u> of common ancestor. common ancestor cannot be original start node, because it has to be an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of original end node. The other case is similar. Also, notice that the two <u>children</u> will never be equal if both are defined.

- 11. Let contained children be a list of all children of common ancestor that are contained in range, in tree order.
- 12. If any member of contained children is a doctype, then throw a "HierarchyRequestError" DOMException.

Note

We do not have to worry about the first or last partially contained node, because a <u>doctype</u> can never be partially contained. It cannot be a boundary point of a range, and it cannot be the ancestor of anything.

- 13. If original start node is an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of original end node, set new node to original start node and new offset to original start offset.
- 14. Otherwise:
 - 1. Let reference node equal original start node.
 - 2. While reference node's <u>parent</u> is not null and is not an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of original end node, set reference node to its <u>parent</u>.
 - 3. Set new node to the <u>parent</u> of reference node, and new offset to one plus reference node's <u>index</u>.

Note

If reference node's <u>parent</u> is null, it would be the <u>root</u> of range, so would be an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of original end node, and we could not reach this point.

15. If first partially contained child is a <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, or <u>Comment</u> <u>node</u>:

Note

In this case, first partially contained child is original start node.

- 1. Let clone be a <u>clone</u> of original start node.
- 2. Set the <u>data</u> of clone to the result of <u>substringing data</u> with node original start node, offset original start offset, and count original start node' s <u>length</u> minus original start offset.
- 3. Append clone to fragment.
- 4. <u>Replace data</u> with node original start node, offset original start offset, count original start node's <u>length</u> minus original start offset, and data the empty string.

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 92/146

- 16. Otherwise, if first partially contained child is not null:
 - 1. Let clone be a <u>clone</u> of first partially contained child.
 - 2. Append clone to fragment.
 - 3. Let subrange be a new <u>live range</u> whose <u>start</u> is (original start node, original start offset) and whose <u>end</u> is (first partially contained child, first partially contained child' s <u>length</u>).
 - 4. Let subfragment be the result of extracting subrange.
 - 5. Append subfragment to clone.
- 17. For each contained child in contained children, append contained child to fragment.
- 18. If last partially contained child is a <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, or <u>Comment</u> <u>node</u>:

Note

In this case, last partially contained child is original end node.

- 1. Let clone be a <u>clone</u> of original end node.
- 2. Set the <u>data</u> of clone to the result of <u>substringing data</u> with node original end node, offset 0, and count original end offset.
- 3. Append clone to fragment.
- 4. Replace data with node original end node, offset 0, count original end offset, and data the empty string.
- 19. Otherwise, if last partially contained child is not null:
 - 1. Let clone be a clone of last partially contained child.
 - 2. Append clone to fragment.
 - 3. Let subrange be a new <u>live range</u> whose <u>start</u> is (last partially contained child, 0) and whose <u>end</u> is (original end node, original end offset).
 - 4. Let subfragment be the result of extracting subrange.
 - 5. Append subfragment to clone.
- 20. Set range's start and end to (new node, new offset).
- 21. Return fragment.

The extractContents () method, when invoked, must return the result of extracting this.



To **clone the contents** of a <u>live range</u> range, run these steps:

- 1. Let fragment be a new <u>DocumentFragment</u> <u>node</u> whose <u>node document</u> is range' s <u>start node</u>' s <u>node document</u>.
- 2. If range is <u>collapsed</u>, then return fragment.
- 3. Let original start node, original start offset, original end node, and original end offset be range's start node, start offset, end node, and end offset, respectively.
- 4. If original start node is original end node, and they are a <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, or <u>Comment node</u>:
 - 1. Let clone be a <u>clone</u> of original start node.
 - 2. Set the <u>data</u> of clone to the result of <u>substringing data</u> with node original start node, offset original start offset, and count original end offset minus original start offset.
 - 3. Append clone to fragment.
 - 4. Return fragment.
- 5. Let common ancestor be original start node.
- 6. While common ancestor is not an inclusive ancestor of original end node, set common ancestor to its own parent.
- 7. Let first partially contained child be null.
- 8. If original start node is not an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of original end node, set first partially contained child to the first <u>child</u> of common ancestor that is <u>partially contained</u> in range.
- 9 Let last nartially contained child be null.

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 93/146

10. If original end node is not an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of original start node, set last partially contained child to the last <u>child</u> of common ancestor that is <u>partially contained</u> in range.

Note

These variable assignments do actually always make sense. For instance, if original start node is not an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of original end node, original start node is itself <u>partially contained</u> in range, and so are all its <u>ancestors</u> up until a <u>child</u> of common ancestor. common ancestor cannot be original start node, because it has to be an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of original end node. The other case is similar. Also, notice that the two <u>children</u> will never be equal if both are defined.

- 11. Let contained children be a list of all children of common ancestor that are contained in range, in tree order.
- 12. If any member of contained children is a doctype, then throw a "HierarchyRequestError" DOMException.

Note

We do not have to worry about the first or last partially contained node, because a <u>doctype</u> can never be partially contained. It cannot be a boundary point of a range, and it cannot be the ancestor of anything.

13. If first partially contained child is a <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, or <u>Comment</u> <u>node</u>:

Note

In this case, first partially contained child is original start node.

- 1. Let clone be a <u>clone</u> of original start node.
- 2. Set the <u>data</u> of clone to the result of <u>substringing data</u> with node original start node, offset original start offset, and count original start node' s <u>length</u> minus original start offset.
- 3. Append clone to fragment.
- 14. Otherwise, if first partially contained child is not null:
 - 1. Let clone be a clone of first partially contained child.
 - 2. Append clone to fragment.
 - 3. Let subrange be a new <u>live range</u> whose <u>start</u> is (original start node, original start offset) and whose <u>end</u> is (first partially contained child, first partially contained child' s <u>length</u>).
 - 4. Let subfragment be the result of cloning the contents of subrange.
 - 5. Append subfragment to clone.
- 15. For each contained child in contained children:
 - 1. Let clone be a <u>clone</u> of contained child with the clone children flag set.
 - 2. Append clone to fragment.
- 16. If last partially contained child is a <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, or <u>Comment node</u>:

Note

In this case, last partially contained child is original end node.

- 1. Let clone be a <u>clone</u> of original end node.
- 2. Set the <u>data</u> of clone to the result of <u>substringing data</u> with node original end node, offset 0, and count original end offset.
- 3. Append clone to fragment.
- 17. Otherwise, if last partially contained child is not null:
 - 1. Let clone be a <u>clone</u> of last partially contained child.
 - 2. Append clone to fragment.
 - 3. Let subrange be a new <u>live range</u> whose <u>start</u> is (last partially contained child, 0) and whose <u>end</u> is (original end node, original end offset).
 - 4. Let subfragment be the result of <u>cloning the contents</u> of subrange.
 - 5. Append subfragment to clone.

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 94/146

18. Return fragment.

The cloneContents () method, when invoked, must return the result of cloning the contents of this.



To **insert** a <u>node</u> node into a <u>live range</u> range, run these steps:

- 1. If range's <u>start node</u> is a <u>ProcessingInstruction</u> or <u>Comment node</u>, is a <u>Text node</u> whose <u>parent</u> is null, or is node, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>HierarchyRequestError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. Let referenceNode be null.
- 3. If range' s start node is a Text node, set referenceNode to that Text node.
- 4. Otherwise, set referenceNode to the child of start node whose index is start offset, and null if there is no such child.
- 5. Let parent be range's start node if referenceNode is null, and referenceNode's parent otherwise.
- 6. Ensure pre-insertion validity of node into parent before referenceNode.
- 7. If range' s start node is a Text node, set referenceNode to the result of splitting it with offset range' s start offset.
- 8. If node is referenceNode, set referenceNode to its <u>next sibling</u>.
- 9. If node's <u>parent</u> is non-null, then <u>remove</u> node.
- 10. Let newOffset be parent' s length if referenceNode is null, and referenceNode' s index otherwise.
- 11. Increase newOffset by node's length if node is a DocumentFragment node, and one otherwise.
- 12. Pre-insert node into parent before referenceNode.
- 13. If range is <u>collapsed</u>, then set range' s <u>end</u> to (parent, newOffset).

The insertNode (node) method, when invoked, must insert node into this.



The surroundContents (newParent) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If a non-Text node is partially contained in this, then throw an "InvalidStateError" DOMException.
- 2. If newParent is a <u>Document, DocumentType</u>, or <u>DocumentFragment node</u>, then <u>throw</u> an "<u>InvalidNodeTypeError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.

Note

For historical reasons <u>Text</u>, <u>ProcessingInstruction</u>, and <u>Comment</u> <u>nodes</u> are not checked here and end up throwing later on as a side effect.

- 3. Let fragment be the result of extracting this.
- 4. If newParent has children, then replace all with null within newParent.
- 5. Insert newParent into this.
- 6. Append fragment to newParent.
- 7. Select newParent within this.

The cloneRange () method, when invoked, must return a new live range with the same start and end as this.



The detach() method, when invoked, must do nothing. Note Its functionality (disabling a Range object) was removed, but the method itself is preserved for compatibility.

For web developers (non-normative)

position = range.comparePoint(node, offset)

Returns -1 if the point is before the range, 0 if the point is in the range, and 1 if the point is after the range.

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 95/146

Returns whether range intersects node.

The isPointInRange (node, offset) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. If node' s <u>root</u> is different from <u>this</u>' s <u>root</u>, return false.
- 2. If node is a <u>doctype</u>, then <u>throw</u> an "<u>InvalidNodeTypeError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 3. If offset is greater than node's <u>length</u>, then <u>throw</u> an "<u>IndexSizeError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 4. If (node, offset) is before start or after end, return false.
- 5. Return true.

The comparePoint (node, offset) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. If node's <u>root</u> is different from <u>this</u>'s <u>root</u>, then <u>throw</u> a "<u>WrongDocumentError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. If node is a <u>doctype</u>, then <u>throw</u> an "<u>InvalidNodeTypeError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 3. If offset is greater than node's <u>length</u>, then <u>throw</u> an "<u>IndexSizeError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 4. If (node, offset) is before start, return −1.
- 5. If (node, offset) is after end, return 1.
- 6. Return 0.

The intersectsNode (node) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. If node's <u>root</u> is different from <u>this</u>'s <u>root</u>, return false.
- 2. Let parent be node's parent.
- 3. If parent is null, return true.
- 4. Let offset be node's index.
- 5. If (parent, offset) is <u>before end</u> and (parent, offset plus 1) is <u>after start</u>, return true.
- 6. Return false.

The **stringification behavior** must run these steps:



- 1. Let s be the empty string.
- 2. If <u>this</u>' s <u>start node</u> is <u>this</u>' s <u>end node</u> and it is a <u>Text node</u>, then return the substring of that <u>Text node</u>' s <u>data</u> beginning at <u>this</u>' s <u>start offset</u> and ending at <u>this</u>' s <u>end offset</u>.
- 3. If <u>this</u>' s <u>start node</u> is a <u>Text node</u>, then append the substring of that <u>node</u>' s <u>data</u> from <u>this</u>' s <u>start offset</u> until the end to s.
- 4. Append the concatenation of the data of all Text nodes that are contained in this, in tree order, to s.
- 5. If <u>this</u>' s <u>end node</u> is a <u>Text node</u>, then append the substring of that <u>node</u>' s <u>data</u> from its start until <u>this</u>' s <u>end</u> <u>offset</u> to s.
- 6. Return s.

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 96/146

Note

The createContextualFragment(), getClientRects(), and getBoundingClientRect() methods are defined in other specifications. [DOM-Parsing] <a href="mailto:CSSOM-VIEW]

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 97/146

6. Traversal §

NodeIterator and TreeWalker objects can be used to filter and traverse node trees.

Each Node I terator and Tree Walker object has an associated active flag to avoid recursive invocations. It is initially unset.

Each <u>NodeIterator</u> and <u>TreeWalker</u> object also has an associated **root** (a <u>node</u>), a **whatToShow** (a bitmask), and a **filter** (a callback).

To filter a <u>node</u> node within a <u>NodeIterator</u> or <u>TreeWalker</u> object traverser, run these steps:

- 1. If traverser's <u>active flag</u> is set, then throw an "<u>InvalidStateError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. Let n be node' s nodeType attribute value 1.
- 3. If the nth bit (where 0 is the least significant bit) of traverser's <u>whatToShow</u> is not set, then return <u>FILTER SKIP</u>.
- 4. If traverser's filter is null, then return FILTER ACCEPT.
- 5. Set traverser's active flag.
- 6. Let result be the return value of <u>call a user object's operation</u> with traverser's <u>filter</u>, "acceptNode", and « node ». If this throws an exception, then unset traverser's <u>active flag</u> and rethrow the exception.
- 7. Unset traverser's active flag.
- 8. Return result.

6.1. Interface NodeIterator §

```
✓ MDN
```

```
ID [Exposed=Window]
interface NodeIterator {

    [SameObject] readonly attribute Node root;
    readonly attribute Node referenceNode;
    readonly attribute boolean pointerBeforeReferenceNode;
    readonly attribute unsigned long whatToShow;
    readonly attribute NodeFilter? filter;

    Node? nextNode();
    Node? previousNode();

    undefined detach();
};
```

Note

NodeIterator objects can be created using the createNodeIterator () method on Document objects.

Each <u>NodeIterator</u> object has an associated **iterator collection**, which is a <u>collection</u> rooted at the <u>NodeIterator</u> object's <u>root</u>, whose filter matches any <u>node</u>.

Each Node I terator object also has an associated reference (a node) and pointer before reference (a boolean).

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 98/146

Note

As mentioned earlier, Node I terator objects have an associated active flag, root, what To Show, and filter as well.

The Node I terator pre-removing steps given a nodelterator and to BeRemoved Node, are as follows:

- 1. If toBeRemovedNode is not an <u>inclusive ancestor</u> of nodelterator's <u>reference</u>, or toBeRemovedNode is nodelterator's <u>root</u>, then return.
- 2. If nodelterator's pointer before reference is true, then:
 - 1. Let next be toBeRemovedNode's first <u>following node</u> that is an <u>inclusive descendant</u> of nodelterator's <u>root</u> and is not an <u>inclusive descendant</u> of toBeRemovedNode, and null if there is no such <u>node</u>.
 - 2. If next is non-null, then set nodelterator's reference to next and return.
 - 3. Otherwise, set nodelterator's pointer before reference to false.

Note

Steps are not terminated here.

3. Set nodelterator' s <u>reference</u> to toBeRemovedNode' s <u>parent</u>, if toBeRemovedNode' s <u>previous sibling</u> is null, and to the <u>inclusive descendant</u> of toBeRemovedNode' s <u>previous sibling</u> that appears last in <u>tree order</u> otherwise.

The root attribute' s getter, when invoked, must return this' s root.

The referenceNode attribute's getter, when invoked, must return this's reference.

The pointerBeforeReferenceNode attribute' s getter, when invoked, must return this' s pointer before reference.

The what ToShow attribute's getter, when invoked, must return this's whatToShow.

The filter attribute' s getter, when invoked, must return this' s filter.

To traverse, given a NodeIterator object iterator and a direction direction, run these steps:

- 1. Let node be iterator's reference.
- 2. Let beforeNode be iterator's pointer before reference.
- 3. While true:
 - 1. Branch on direction:
 - → next

If beforeNode is false, then set node to the first <u>node following</u> node in iterator's <u>iterator collection</u>. If there is no such <u>node</u>, then return null.

If beforeNode is true, then set it to false.

→ previous

If beforeNode is true, then set node to the first <u>node preceding</u> node in iterator's <u>iterator collection</u>. If there is no such <u>node</u>, then return null.

If beforeNode is false, then set it to true.

- 2. Let result be the result of <u>filtering</u> node within iterator.
- 3. If result is <u>FILTER ACCEPT</u>, then <u>break</u>.
- 4. Set iterator's <u>reference</u> to node.
- 5. Set iterator's pointer before reference to beforeNode.
- C D-1.....

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 99/146

The nextNode () method, when invoked, must return the result of traversing with this and next.



The previousNode() method, when invoked, must return the result of traversing with this and previous.

The detach() method, when invoked, must do nothing. Note Its functionality (disabling a NodeIterator object) was removed, but the method itself is preserved for compatibility.

6.2. Interface <u>TreeWalker</u> §

```
✓ MDN
```

```
ID    [Exposed=Window]
interface TreeWalker {
    [SameObject] readonly attribute Node root;
    readonly attribute unsigned long whatToShow;
    readonly attribute NodeFilter? filter;
        attribute Node currentNode;

    Node? parentNode();
    Node? firstChild();
    Node? lastChild();
    Node? previousSibling();
    Node? nextSibling();
    Node? previousNode();
    Node? previousNode();
};
```

Note

<u>TreeWalker</u> objects can be created using the <u>createTreeWalker</u> objects.

Each <u>TreeWalker</u> object has an associated **current** (a <u>node</u>).

Note

As mentioned earlier <u>TreeWalker</u> objects have an associated <u>root</u>, <u>whatToShow</u>, and <u>filter</u> as well.

The root attribute' s getter, when invoked, must return this' s root.

The what ToShow attribute's getter, when invoked, must return this's what ToShow.

The filter attribute's getter, when invoked, must return this's filter.

The currentNode attribute' s getter, when invoked, must return this' s current.

The <u>currentNode</u> attribute' s setter, when invoked, must set <u>this'</u> s <u>current</u> to the given value.

The parentNode () method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. Let node be this' s current.
- 2. While node is non-null and is not this' s root:
 - 1. Set node to node' s parent.
 - 2. If node is non-null and filtering node within this returns FILTER ACCEPT, then set this' s current to node and

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 100/146

3. Return null.

To traverse children, given a walker and type, run these steps:

- 1. Let node be walker's current.
- 2. Set node to node' s first child if type is first, and node' s last child if type is last.
- 3. While node is non-null:
 - 1. Let result be the result of <u>filtering</u> node within walker.
 - 2. If result is <u>FILTER ACCEPT</u>, then set walker's <u>current</u> to node and return node.
 - 3. If result is **FILTER SKIP**, then:
 - 1. Let child be node' s first child if type is first, and node' s last child if type is last.
 - 2. If child is non-null, then set node to child and continue.
 - 4. While node is non-null:
 - 1. Let sibling be node' s next sibling if type is first, and node' s previous sibling if type is last.
 - 2. If sibling is non-null, then set node to sibling and break.
 - 3. Let parent be node' s parent.
 - 4. If parent is null, walker's <u>root</u>, or walker's <u>current</u>, then return null.
 - 5. Set node to parent.
- 4. Return null.

The firstChild() method, when invoked, must traverse children with this and first.



The lastChild() method, when invoked, must traverse children with this and last.

To traverse siblings, given a walker and type, run these steps:

- 1. Let node be walker's current.
- 2. If node is root, then return null.
- 3. While true:
 - 1. Let sibling be node' s next sibling if type is next, and node' s previous sibling if type is previous.
 - 2. While sibling is non-null:
 - 1. Set node to sibling.
 - 2. Let result be the result of <u>filtering</u> node within walker.
 - 3. If result is FILTER ACCEPT, then set walker's current to node and return node.
 - 4. Set sibling to node' s first child if type is next, and node' s last child if type is previous.
 - 5. If result is <u>FILTER REJECT</u> or sibling is null, then set sibling to node' s <u>next sibling</u> if type is next, and node' s <u>previous sibling</u> if type is previous.
 - 3. Set node to node' s parent.
 - 4. If node is null or walker's root, then return null.
 - 5. If the return value of <u>filtering</u> node within walker is <u>FILTER ACCEPT</u>, then return null.

The nextSibling() method, when invoked, must traverse siblings with this and next.

The previous Sibling () method, when invoked, must traverse siblings with this and previous.

✓ MDN ✓ MDN ✓ MDN

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 101/146

- 1. Let node be this' s current.
- 2. While node is not this' s root:
 - 1. Let sibling be node' s previous sibling.
 - 2. While sibling is non-null:
 - 1. Set node to sibling.
 - 2. Let result be the result of filtering node within this.
 - 3. While result is not FILTER REJECT and node has a child:
 - 1. Set node to node's last child.
 - 2. Set result to the result of filtering node within this.
 - 4. If result is <u>FILTER ACCEPT</u>, then set <u>this</u>' s <u>current</u> to node and return node.
 - 5. Set sibling to node' s previous sibling.
 - 3. If node is this' s root or node' s parent is null, then return null.
 - 4. Set node to node's parent.
 - 5. If the return value of <u>filtering</u> node within <u>this</u> is <u>FILTER ACCEPT</u>, then set <u>this</u>' s <u>current</u> to node and return node.
- 3. Return null.

The nextNode () method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. Let node be this' s current.
- 2. Let result be FILTER ACCEPT.
- 3. While true:
 - 1. While result is not <u>FILTER REJECT</u> and node has a <u>child</u>:
 - 1. Set node to its first child.
 - 2. Set result to the result of filtering node within this.
 - 3. If result is FILTER ACCEPT, then set this' s current to node and return node.
 - 2. Let sibling be null.
 - 3. Let temporary be node.
 - 4. While temporary is non-null:
 - 1. If temporary is this' s root, then return null.
 - 2. Set sibling to temporary's <u>next sibling</u>.
 - 3. If sibling is non-null, then set node to sibling and break.
 - 4. Set temporary to temporary's parent.
 - 5. Set result to the result of <u>filtering</u> node within <u>this</u>.
 - 6. If result is <u>FILTER ACCEPT</u>, then set <u>this</u>' s <u>current</u> to node and return node.

6.3. Interface NodeFilter §

✓ MDN

[Exposed=Window]
File an issue about the selected text



https://dom.spec.whatwg.org

```
// Constants for acceptNode()
const unsigned short FILTER ACCEPT = 1;
const unsigned short FILTER REJECT = 2;
const unsigned short FILTER SKIP = 3;
// Constants for whatToShow
const unsigned long SHOW ALL = 0xFFFFFFFF;
const <u>unsigned long SHOW ELEMENT</u> = 0x1;
const <u>unsigned long SHOW ATTRIBUTE</u> = 0x2;
const <u>unsigned long SHOW TEXT</u> = 0x4;
const <u>unsigned long SHOW CDATA SECTION</u> = 0x8;
const unsigned long SHOW_ENTITY_REFERENCE = 0x10; // historical
const unsigned long SHOW_ENTITY = 0x20; // historical
const <u>unsigned long SHOW PROCESSING INSTRUCTION</u> = 0x40;
const <u>unsigned long SHOW COMMENT</u> = 0x80;
const <u>unsigned long SHOW DOCUMENT</u> = 0x100;
const <u>unsigned long SHOW DOCUMENT TYPE</u> = 0x200;
const unsigned long SHOW DOCUMENT FRAGMENT = 0x400;
const unsigned long SHOW_NOTATION = 0x800; // historical
<u>unsigned short</u> acceptNode(<u>Node</u> node);
```

Note

<u>NodeFilter</u> objects can be used as <u>filter</u> for <u>NodeIterator</u> and <u>TreeWalker</u> objects and also provide constants for their <u>whatToShow</u> bitmask. A <u>NodeFilter</u> object is typically implemented as a JavaScript function.

These constants can be used as **filter** return value:

```
FILTER_ACCEPT (1);FILTER_REJECT (2);FILTER_SKIP (3).
```

These constants can be used for whatToShow:

```
SHOW_ALL (4294967295, FFFFFFFFF in hexadecimal);
SHOW_ELEMENT (1);
SHOW_ATTRIBUTE (2);
SHOW_TEXT (4);
SHOW_CDATA_SECTION (8);
SHOW_PROCESSING_INSTRUCTION (64, 40 in hexadecimal);
SHOW_COMMENT (128, 80 in hexadecimal);
SHOW_DOCUMENT (256, 100 in hexadecimal);
```

SHOW_DOCUMENT_TYPE (512, 200 in hexadecimal); SHOW_DOCUMENT_FRAGMENT (1024, 400 in hexadecimal).

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 103/146

7. Sets §

Note

Yes, the name <u>DOMTokenList</u> is an unfortunate legacy mishap.

7.1. Interface DOMTokenList

```
✓ MDN
```

```
ID [Exposed=Window]
interface DOMTokenList {

readonly attribute unsigned long length;
getter DOMString? item(unsigned long index);
boolean contains(DOMString token);
[CEReactions] undefined add(DOMString... tokens);
[CEReactions] undefined remove(DOMString... tokens);
[CEReactions] boolean toggle(DOMString token, optional boolean force);
[CEReactions] boolean replace(DOMString token, DOMString newToken);
boolean supports(DOMString token);
[CEReactions] stringifier attribute DOMString value;
iterable<DOMString>;
];
```

A <u>DOMTokenList</u> object has an associated **token set** (a <u>set</u>), which is initially empty.

A <u>DOMTokenList</u> object also has an associated <u>element</u> and an <u>attribute</u>' s <u>local name</u>.

<u>Specifications</u> may define **supported tokens** for a <u>DOMTokenList</u>'s associated <u>attribute'</u> s <u>local name</u>.

A <u>DOMTokenList</u> object' s validation steps for a given token are:

- 1. If the associated <u>attribute</u>' s <u>local name</u> does not define <u>supported tokens</u>, <u>throw</u> a TypeError.
- 2. Let lowercase token be a copy of token, in ASCII lowercase.
- 3. If lowercase token is present in supported tokens, return true.
- 4. Return false.

A **DOMTokenList** object' s **update steps** are:

- 1. If the associated element does not have an associated attribute and token set is empty, then return.
- 2. <u>Set an attribute value</u> for the associated <u>element</u> using associated <u>attribute</u>'s <u>local name</u> and the result of running the ordered set serializer for token set.

A <u>DOMTokenList</u> object' s **serialize steps** are to return the result of running <u>get an attribute value</u> given the associated <u>element</u> and the associated <u>attribute</u>' s <u>local name</u>.

A <u>DOMTokenList</u> object has these <u>attribute change steps</u> for its associated <u>element</u>:

File an issue about the selected text oute's local name, namespace is null, and value is null, then empty token set.

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org

2. Otherwise, if localName is associated attribute's local name, namespace is null, then set to value, parsed.

When a **DOMTokenList** object is created, then:

- 1. Let element be associated element.
- 2. Let localName be associated attribute's local name.
- 3. Let value be the result of getting an attribute value given element and localName.
- 4. Run the <u>attribute change steps</u> for element, localName, value, value, and null.

```
For web developers (non-normative)
```

```
tokenlist . <u>length</u>
```

Returns the number of tokens.

```
tokenlist . item(index)
```

tokenlist[index]

Returns the token with index index.

```
tokenlist . contains(token)
```

Returns true if token is present, and false otherwise.

```
tokenlist . add(tokens…)
```

Adds all arguments passed, except those already present.

Throws a "SyntaxError" DOMException if one of the arguments is the empty string.

Throws an "InvalidCharacterError" DOMException if one of the arguments contains any ASCII whitespace.

```
tokenlist . remove(tokens...)
```

Removes arguments passed, if they are present.

Throws a "SyntaxError" DOMException if one of the arguments is the empty string.

Throws an "InvalidCharacterError" DOMException if one of the arguments contains any ASCII whitespace.

```
tokenlist . <a href="token">tokenlist</a> . <a href="token">to
```

If force is not given, "toggles" token, removing it if it's present and adding it if it's not present. If force is true, adds token (same as add()). If force is false, removes token (same as remove()).

Returns true if token is now present, and false otherwise.

Throws a "SyntaxError" DOMException if token is empty.

Throws an "InvalidCharacterError" DOMException if token contains any spaces.

```
tokenlist . replace(token, newToken)
```

Replaces token with newToken.

Returns true if token was replaced with newToken, and false otherwise.

Throws a "SyntaxError" DOMException if one of the arguments is the empty string.

Throws an "InvalidCharacterError" DOMException if one of the arguments contains any ASCII whitespace.

```
tokenlist . <u>supports(token)</u>
```

Returns true if token is in the associated attribute' s supported tokens. Returns false otherwise.

Throws a TypeError if the associated attribute has no supported tokens defined.

```
tokenlist . value
```

Returns the associated set as string.

Can be set, to change the associated attribute.

The length attribute' getter must return this' s token set' s size.

✓ MDN

The object' s <u>supported property indices</u> are the numbers in the range zero to object' s <u>token set</u>' s <u>size</u> minus one, unless <u>token set</u> is <u>empty</u>, in which case there are no <u>supported property indices</u>.

ced, must run these steps:

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 105/146

1. If index is equal to or greater than this' s token set' s size, then return null.

2. Return this' s token set[index].

The contains (token) method, when invoked, must return true if this' s token set[token] exists, and false otherwise.

The add (tokens...) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. For each token in tokens:
 - 1. If token is the empty string, then throw a "SyntaxError" DOMException.
 - 2. If token contains any <u>ASCII whitespace</u>, then <u>throw</u> an "<u>InvalidCharacterError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. For each token in tokens, append token to this' s token set.
- 3. Run the <u>update steps</u>.

The remove (tokens...) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. For each token in tokens:
 - 1. If token is the empty string, then throw a "SyntaxError" DOMException.
 - 2. If token contains any <u>ASCII whitespace</u>, then <u>throw</u> an "<u>InvalidCharacterError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 2. For each token in tokens, <u>remove</u> token from <u>this</u>' s <u>token set</u>.
- 3. Run the update steps.

The toggle (token, force) method, when invoked, must run these steps:



- 1. If token is the empty string, then throw a "SyntaxError" DOMException.
- 2. If token contains any <u>ASCII whitespace</u>, then <u>throw</u> an "<u>InvalidCharacterError</u>" <u>DOMException</u>.
- 3. If this' s token set[token] exists, then:
 - 1. If force is either not given or is false, then <u>remove</u> token from <u>this</u>' s <u>token set</u>, run the <u>update steps</u> and return false.
 - 2. Return true.
- 4. Otherwise, if force not given or is true, append token to this' s token set, run the update steps, and return true.
- 5. Return false.

Note

The <u>update steps</u> are not always run for <u>toggle()</u> for web compatibility.



The replace (token, newToken) method, when invoked, must run these steps:

- 1. If either token or newToken is the empty string, then throw a "SyntaxError" DOMException.
- 2. If either token or newToken contains any ASCII whitespace, then throw an "InvalidCharacterError" DOMException.
- 3. If this' s token set does not contain token, then return false.
- 4. Replace token in this' s token set with newToken.
- 5. Run the <u>update steps</u>.
- 6. Return true.

Note

The <u>update steps</u> are not always run for <u>replace()</u> for web compatibility.

The supports (token) method when invoked, must run these steps: File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 106/146

1. Let result be the return value of <u>validation steps</u> called with token.

2. Return result.

The value attribute must return the result of running this's serialize steps.



Setting the <u>value</u> attribute must <u>set an attribute value</u> for the associated <u>element</u> using associated <u>attribute</u>' s <u>local name</u> and the given value.

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 107/146

8. XPath §

DOM Level 3 XPath defined an API for evaluating XPath 1.0 expressions. These APIs are widely implemented, but have not been maintained. The interface definitions are maintained here so that they can be updated when Web IDL changes. Complete definitions of these APIs remain necessary and such work is tracked and can be contributed to in whatwg/dom#67. [DOM-Level-3-XPath] [XPath] [WEBIDL]

8.1. Interface XPathResult §

```
ID
    [Exposed=Window]
    interface XPathResult {
      const unsigned short ANY_TYPE = 0;
      const unsigned short NUMBER_TYPE = 1;
      const unsigned short STRING_TYPE = 2;
      const unsigned short BOOLEAN_TYPE = 3;
      const unsigned short UNORDERED_NODE_ITERATOR_TYPE = 4;
      const unsigned short ORDERED_NODE_ITERATOR_TYPE = 5;
      const unsigned short UNORDERED_NODE_SNAPSHOT_TYPE = 6;
      const unsigned short ORDERED_NODE_SNAPSHOT_TYPE = 7;
      const unsigned short ANY_UNORDERED_NODE_TYPE = 8;
      const unsigned short FIRST_ORDERED_NODE_TYPE = 9;
      readonly attribute <u>unsigned short</u> resultType;
      readonly attribute unrestricted double numberValue;
      readonly attribute DOMString stringValue;
      readonly attribute boolean boolean Value;
      readonly attribute Node? singleNodeValue;
      readonly attribute <a href="boolean">boolean</a> invalidIteratorState;
      readonly attribute unsigned long snapshotLength;
      Node? iterateNext();
      Node? snapshotItem(unsigned long index);
```

8.2. Interface XPathExpression §

8.3. Mixin XPathEvaluatorBase §

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org

```
L callback interface XPathNSResolver {
    DOMString? lookupNamespaceURI (DOMString? prefix);
};
interface mixin XPathEvaluatorBase {
    [NewObject] XPathExpression createExpression (DOMString expression, optional XPathNSResolver?
resolver = null);
    XPathNSResolver createNSResolver (Node nodeResolver);
    // XPathResult. ANY_TYPE = 0
    XPathResult evaluate (DOMString expression, Node contextNode, optional XPathNSResolver? resolver = null, optional unsigned short type = 0, optional XPathResult? result = null);
};
Document includes XPathEvaluatorBase;
```

8.4. Interface XPathEvaluator §

Note

For historical reasons you can both construct XPathEvaluator and access the same methods on Document.

9. Historical

As explained in goals this standard is a significant revision of various obsolete DOM specifications. This section enumerates the incompatible changes.

9.1. DOM Events §

These are the changes made to the features described in the "DOM Event Architecture", "Basic Event Interfaces", "Mutation Events", and "Mutation Name Event Types" chapters of DOM Level 3 Events. The other chapters are defined by the UI Events specification. [UIEVENTS]

- Removes MutationEvent and MutationNameEvent.
- Fire is no longer synonymous with dispatch, but includes initializing an event.
- The propagation and canceled flags are unset when invoking initEvent() rather than after dispatch.
- Event's <u>timeStamp</u> attribute is a <u>DOMHighResTimeStamp</u> rather than a <u>DOMTimeStamp</u>.

9.2. DOM Core §

These are the changes made to the features described in DOM Level 3 Core.

<u>DOMString</u>, <u>DOMException</u>, and <u>DOMTimeStamp</u> are now defined in Web IDL.

DOMStringList is now defined in HTML.

hasAttributes () and attributes moved from Node to Element.

namespaceURI, prefix, and localName moved from Node to Element and Attr.

The remainder of interfaces and interface members listed in this section were removed to simplify the web platform. Implementations conforming to this specification will not support them.

Interfaces:

- DOMConfiguration
- DOMError
- DOMErrorHandler
- DOMImplementationList
- DOMImplementationSource
- DOMLocator
- DOMObject
- DOMUserData
- Entity
- EntityReference
- NameList
- Notation
- TypeInfo
- UserDataHandler

Interface members:

<u>Node</u>

- isSupported
- getFeature()
- getUserData()
- setUserData()

File an issue about the selected text

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org

110/146

- createEntityReference()
- xmlEncoding
- xmlStandalone
- xmlVersion
- strictErrorChecking
- domConfig
- normalizeDocument()
- renameNode()

$\underline{\texttt{DOMImplementation}}$

• getFeature()

<u>Attr</u>

- schemaTypeInfo
- isId

<u>Element</u>

- schemaTypeInfo
- setIdAttribute()
- setIdAttributeNS()
- setIdAttributeNode()

$\underline{\texttt{DocumentType}}$

- entities
- notations
- internalSubset

Text

- isElementContentWhitespace
- replaceWholeText()

9.3. DOM Ranges §

These are the changes made to the features described in the "Document Object Model Range" chapter of DOM Level 2 Traversal and Range.

- RangeException has been removed.
- detach() is now a no-op.

9.4. DOM Traversal §

These are the changes made to the features described in the "Document Object Model Traversal" chapter of DOM Level 2 Traversal and Range.

- createNodeIterator() and createNodeIterator() and createTreeWalker() now have optional arguments and lack a fourth argument which is no longer relevant given entity references never made it into the DOM.
- The expandEntityReferences attribute has been removed from the NodeIterator and TreeWalker interfaces for the aforementioned reason.
- nextNode() and previousNode() now throw when invoked from a NodeFilter to align with user agents.
- detach() is now a no-op.

Acknowledgments §

There have been a lot of people that have helped make DOM more interoperable over the years and thereby furthered the goals of this standard. Likewise many people have helped making this standard what it is today.

With that, many thanks to Adam Klein, Adrian Bateman, Ahmid snuggs, Alex Komoroske, Alex Russell, Alexey Shvayka, Andreu Botella, Anthony Ramine, Arkadiusz Michalski, Arnaud Le Hors, Arun Ranganathan, Björn Höhrmann, Boris Zbarsky, Brandon Payton, Brandon Slade, Brandon Wallace, Brian Kardell, Cameron McCormack, Chris Dumez, Chris Paris, Chris Rebert, Cyrille Tuzi, Daniel Glazman, Darin Fisher, David Bruant, David Flanagan, David Håsäther, David Hyatt, Deepak Sherveghar, Dethe Elza, Dimitri Glazkov, Domenic Denicola, Dominic Cooney, Dominique Hazaël-Massieux, Don Jordan, Doug Schepers, Edgar Chen, Elisée Maurer, Elliott Sprehn, Emilio Cobos Álvarez, Eric Bidelman, Erik Arvidsson, Garv Kacmarcik, Gavin Nicol, Giorgio Liscio, Glen Huang, Glenn Adams, Glenn Maynard, Hajime Morrita, Harald Alvestrand, Hayato Ito, Henri Sivonen, Hongchan Choi, Hunan Rostomyan, Ian Hickson, Igor Bukanov, Jacob Rossi, Jake Archibald, Jake Verbaten, James Graham, James Greene, James Robinson, Jeffrey Yasskin, Jens Lindström, Jesse McCarthy, Jinho Bang, João Eiras, Joe Kesselman, John Atkins, John Dai, Jonas Sicking, Jonathan Kingston, Jonathan Robie, Joris van der Wel, Joshua Bell, J. S. Choi, Jungkee Song, Justin Summerlin, Kagami Sascha Rosylight, 呂康豪 (Kang-Hao Lu), 田村健人 (Kent TAMURA), Kevin J. Sung, Kevin Sweeney, Kirill Topolyan, Koji Ishii, Lachlan Hunt, Lauren Wood, Luke Zielinski, Magne Andersson, Majid Valipour, Malte Ubl, Manish Goregaokar, Manish Tripathi, Marcos Caceres, Mark Miller, Martijn van der Ven, Mats Palmgren, Mounir Lamouri, Michael Stramel, Michael™ Smith, Mike Champion, Mike Taylor, Mike West, Ojan Vafai, Oliver Nightingale, Olli Pettay, Ondřej Žára, Peter Sharpe, Philip Jägenstedt, Philippe Le Hégaret, Piers Wombwell, Pierre-Marie Dartus, prosody—Gab Vereable Context(, Rafael Weinstein, Rakina Zata Amni, Richard Bradshaw, Rick Byers, Rick Waldron, Robbert Broersma, Robin Berjon, Roland Steiner, Rune F. Halvorsen, Russell Bicknell, Ruud Steltenpool, Ryosuke Niwa, Sam Dutton, Sam Sneddon, Samuel Giles, Sanket Joshi, Sebastian Mayr, Seo Sanghyeon, Sergey G. Grekhov, Shiki Okasaka, Shinya Kawanaka, Simon Pieters, Stef Busking, Steve Byrne, Stig Halvorsen, Tab Atkins, Takashi Sakamoto, Takayoshi Kochi, Theresa O' Connor, Theodore Dubois, timeless, Timo Tijhof, Tobie Langel, Tom Pixley, Travis Leithead, Trevor Rowbotham, triple-underscore, Veli Şenol, Vidur Apparao, Warren He, Xidorn Quan, Yash Handa, Yehuda Katz, Yoav Weiss, Yoichi Osato, Yoshinori Sano, and Zack Weinberg for being awesome!

This standard is written by <u>Anne van Kesteren</u> (<u>Mozilla</u>, <u>annevk@annevk.nl</u>) with substantial contributions from Aryeh Gregor (<u>ayg@aryeh.name</u>) and Ms2ger (<u>ms2ger@gmail.com</u>).

Intellectual property rights §

Part of the revision history of the integration points related to <u>custom</u> elements can be found in <u>the w3c/webcomponents</u> <u>repository</u>, which is available under the <u>W3C Software and Document License</u>.

Copyright © WHATWG (Apple, Google, Mozilla, Microsoft). This work is licensed under a <u>Creative Commons Attribution</u> 4.0 International License.

This is the Living Standard. Those interested in the patent-review version should view the Living Standard Review Draft.

Index §

Terms defined by this specification §

- abort, in §3.2
- <u>abort()</u>, in §3.1
- abort algorithms, in §3.2
- AbortController, in §3.1
- AbortController(), in §3.1
- aborted, in §3.2
- aborted flag, in §3.2
- AbortSignal, in §3.2
- AbstractRange, in §5.3
- acceptNode(node), in §6.3
- activation behavior, in §2.7
- active flag, in §6
- add, in §3.2
- add(), in §7.1
- add an event listener, in §2.7
- addedNodes, in §4.3.3
- AddEventListenerOptions, in §2.7
- addEventListener(type, callback), in §2.7
- addEventListener(type, callback, options), in §2.7
- <u>add(...tokens)</u>, in §7.1
- <u>add(tokens)</u>, in §7.1
- <u>adopt</u>, in §4.5
- adopting steps, in §4.5
- adoptNode(node), in §4.5
- after, in §5.2
- after(), in §4.2.8
- after(...nodes), in §4.2.8
- ancestor, in §1.1
- ANY TYPE, in §8.1
- ANY UNORDERED NODE TYPE, in §8.1
- append, in §4.2.3
- <u>append()</u>, in §4.2.6
- append an attribute, in §4.9
- <u>appendChild(node)</u>, in §4.4
- appendData(data), in §4.10
- <u>append(...nodes)</u>, in §4.2.6
- <u>append to an event path</u>, in §2.9
- <u>assign a slot</u>, in §4.2.2.4
- <u>assigned</u>, in §4.2.2.2
- <u>assigned nodes</u>, in §4.2.2.1
- <u>assigned slot</u>, in §4.2.2.2
- <u>assignedSlot</u>, in §4.2.9
- <u>assign slottables</u>, in §4.2.2.4
- assign slottables for a tree, in §4.2.2.4
- attachShadow(init), in §4.9
- AT_TARGET, in §2.2
- Attr, in §4.9.2
- <u>attribute</u>, in §4.9.2
- attribute change steps, in §4.9
- attributeFilter, in §4.3.1
- attribute list

- o dfn for NamedNodeMap, in §4.9.1
- attributeName, in §4.3.3
- attributeNamespace, in §4.3.3
- ATTRIBUTE NODE, in §4.4
- attributeOldValue, in §4.3.1
- attributes
 - o attribute for Element, in §4.9
 - attribute for Node, in §9.2
 - o dict-member for MutationObserverInit, in §4.3.1
- available to element internals, in §4.8
- baseURI, in §4.4
- before, in §5.2
- before(), in §4.2.8
- <u>before(...nodes)</u>, in §4.2.8
- BOOLEAN_TYPE, in §8.1
- booleanValue, in §8.1
- boundary point, in §5.2
- bubbles
 - o attribute for Event, in §2.2
 - o dict-member for EventInit, in §2.2
- BUBBLING PHASE, in §2.2
- callback
 - o dfn for MutationObserver, in §4.3.1
 - o dfn for event listener, in §2.7
- cancelable
 - o attribute for Event, in §2.2
 - o dict-member for EventInit, in §2.2
- cancelBubble, in §2.2
- canceled flag, in §2.2
- capture
 - o dfn for event listener, in §2.7
 - dict-member for EventListenerOptions, in §2.7
- <u>CAPTURING_PHASE</u>, in §2.2
- CDATASection, in §4.12
- CDATA SECTION NODE, in §4.4
- change an attribute, in §4.9
- CharacterData, in §4.10
- <u>characterData</u>, in §4.3.1
- <u>characterDataOldValue</u>, in §4.3.1
- <u>characterSet</u>, in §4.5
- charset, in §4.5
- child, in §1.1
- childElementCount, in §4.2.6
- <u>childList</u>, in §4.3.1
- ChildNode, in §4.2.8
- childNodes, in §4.4
- children
 - attribute for ParentNode, in §4.2.6
 - o dfn for tree, in §1.1
- <u>children changed steps</u>, in §4.2.3
- <u>child text content</u>, in §4.11
- class, in §4.9
- classList, in §4.9
- className, in §4.9
- clone, in §4.4
- clone a node, in §4.4
- cloneContents(), in §5.5
- cloneNode(), in §4.4
- cloneNode(deep), in §4.4
- cloneRange(), in §5.5

- cloning steps, in §4.4
- <u>cloning the contents</u>, in §5.5
- <u>"closed"</u>, in §4.8
- closed-shadow-hidden, in §4.8
- closest(selectors), in §4.9
- collapse(), in §5.5
- collapsed
 - attribute for AbstractRange, in §5.3
 - dfn for range, in §5.3
- collapse(toStart), in §5.5
- collection, in §4.2.10
- <u>Comment</u>, in §4.14
- Comment(), in §4.14
- Comment(data), in §4.14
- COMMENT_NODE, in §4.4
- commonAncestorContainer, in §5.5
- compareBoundaryPoints(how, sourceRange), in §5.5
- compareDocumentPosition(other), in §4.4
- comparePoint(node, offset), in §5.5
- compatMode, in §4.5
- composed
 - o attribute for Event, in §2.2
 - o dict-member for EventInit, in §2.2
 - o dict-member for GetRootNodeOptions, in §4.4
- composed flag, in §2.2
- composedPath(), in §2.2
- connected, in §4.2.2
- constructor, in §2.5
- constructor()
 - constructor for AbortController, in §3.1
 - o constructor for Comment, in §4.14
 - constructor for Document, in §4.5
 - constructor for DocumentFragment, in §4.7
 - constructor for EventTarget, in §2.7
 - o constructor for Range, in §5.5
 - o constructor for Text, in §4.11
 - constructor for XPathEvaluator, in §8.4
- constructor(callback), in §4.3.1
- constructor(data)
 - o constructor for Comment, in §4.14
 - constructor for Text, in §4.11
- constructor(init), in §5.4
- constructor(type)
 - o constructor for CustomEvent, in §2.4
 - constructor for Event, in §2.2
- constructor(type, eventInitDict)
 - constructor for CustomEvent, in §2.4
 - o constructor for Event, in §2.2
- contained, in §5.5
- contains(other), in §4.4
- contains(token), in §7.1
- content type, in §4.5
- <u>contentType</u>, in §4.5
- context object, in §1
- contiguous exclusive Text nodes, in §4.11
- contiguous Text nodes, in §4.11
- converting nodes into a node, in §4.2.6
- create an element, in §4.9
- create an event, in §2.5
- createAttribute(localName), in §4.5

File an issue about the selected text qualifiedName), in §4.5

- createCDATASection(data), in §4.5
- createComment(data), in §4.5
- createDocumentFragment(), in §4.5
- createDocument(namespace, qualifiedName), in §4.5.1
- <u>createDocument(namespace, qualifiedName, doctype)</u>, in §4.5.1
- <u>createDocumentType(qualifiedName, publicId, systemId)</u>, in §4.5.1
- <u>createElement(localName)</u>, in §4.5
- <u>createElement(localName, options)</u>, in §4.5
- <u>createElementNS(namespace, qualifiedName)</u>, in §4.5
- createElementNS(namespace, qualifiedName, options), in §4.5
- createEntityReference(), in §9.2
- createEvent(interface), in §4.5
- createExpression(expression), in §8.3
- <u>createExpression(expression, resolver</u>), in §8.3
- createHTMLDocument(), in §4.5.1
- createHTMLDocument(title), in §4.5.1
- createNodelterator(root), in §4.5
- <u>createNodeIterator(root, whatToShow)</u>, in §4.5
- <u>createNodeIterator(root, whatToShow, filter)</u>, in §4.5
- <u>createNSResolver(nodeResolver)</u>, in §8.3
- createProcessingInstruction(target, data), in §4.5
- <u>createRange()</u>, in §4.5
- createTextNode(data), in §4.5
- createTreeWalker(root), in §4.5
- <u>createTreeWalker(root, whatToShow)</u>, in §4.5
- createTreeWalker(root, whatToShow, filter), in §4.5
- creating an element, in §4.9
- creating an event, in §2.5
- current, in §6.2
- current event, in §2.3
- currentNode, in §6.2
- <u>currentTarget</u>, in §2.2
- <u>custom</u>, in §4.9
- custom element definition, in §4.9
- custom element state, in §4.9
- CustomEvent, in §2.4
- CustomEventInit, in §2.4
- <u>CustomEvent(type)</u>, in §2.4
- <u>CustomEvent(type, eventInitDict)</u>, in §2.4
- data
 - o attribute for CharacterData, in §4.10
 - o dfn for CharacterData, in §4.10
- defaultPrevented, in §2.2
- defined, in §4.9
- <u>delegates focus</u>, in §4.8
- <u>delegatesFocus</u>, in §4.9
- deleteContents(), in §5.5
- <u>deleteData(offset, count)</u>, in §4.10
- descendant, in §1.1
- descendant text content, in §4.11
- detach()
 - method for Nodelterator, in §6.1
 - method for Range, in §5.5
- detail
 - o attribute for CustomEvent, in §2.4
 - <u>dict-member for CustomEventInit</u>, in §2.4
- disconnect(), in §4.3.1
- dispatch, in §2.9
- dispatchEvent(event), in §2.7
- dispatch flag, in §2.2

- attribute for Document, in §4.5
- definition of, in §4.6
- Document, in §4.5
- document, in §4.5
- <u>Document()</u>, in §4.5
- document element, in §4.2.1
- documentElement, in §4.5
- <u>DocumentFragment</u>, in §4.7
- <u>DocumentFragment()</u>, in §4.7
- DOCUMENT FRAGMENT NODE, in §4.4
- DOCUMENT NODE, in §4.4
- <u>DocumentOrShadowRoot</u>, in §4.2.5
- DOCUMENT POSITION CONTAINED BY, in §4.4
- DOCUMENT POSITION CONTAINS, in §4.4
- DOCUMENT POSITION DISCONNECTED, in §4.4
- DOCUMENT POSITION FOLLOWING, in §4.4
- DOCUMENT POSITION IMPLEMENTATION SPECIFIC, in §4.4
- DOCUMENT POSITION PRECEDING, in §4.4
- document tree, in §4.2.1
- <u>DocumentType</u>, in §4.6
- DOCUMENT TYPE NODE, in §4.4
- documentURI, in §4.5
- domConfig, in §9.2
- DOMConfiguration, in §9.2
- DOMError, in §9.2
- DOMErrorHandler, in §9.2
- DOMImplementation, in §4.5.1
- DOMImplementationList, in §9.2
- DOMImplementationSource, in §9.2
- DOMLocator, in §9.2
- DOMObject, in §9.2
- DOMTokenList, in §7.1
- DOMUserData, in §9.2
- Element, in §4.9
- element
 - definition of, in §4.9
 - dfn for Attr, in §4.9.2
 - o dfn for NamedNodeMap, in §4.9.1
- <u>ElementCreationOptions</u>, in §4.5
- element interface, in §4.5
- <u>ELEMENT_NODE</u>, in §4.4
- <u>empty</u>, in §4.2
- encoding, in §4.5
- end, in §5.3
- endContainer
 - attribute for AbstractRange, in §5.3
 - o dict-member for StaticRangeInit, in §5.4
- end node, in §5.3
- end offset, in §5.3
- endOffset
 - o attribute for AbstractRange, in §5.3
 - dict-member for StaticRangeInit, in §5.4
- END TO END, in §5.5
- END TO START, in §5.5
- ensure pre-insertion validity, in §4.2.3
- entities, in §9.2
- Entity, in §9.2
- ENTITY NODE, in §4.4
- EntityReference, in §9.2
- ENTITY REFERENCE NODE, in §4.4

- equals, in §4.4
- <u>evaluate(contextNode)</u>, in §8.2
- evaluate(contextNode, type), in §8.2
- evaluate(contextNode, type, result), in §8.2
- evaluate(expression, contextNode), in §8.3
- evaluate(expression, contextNode, resolver), in §8.3
- evaluate(expression, contextNode, resolver, type), in §8.3
- evaluate(expression, contextNode, resolver, type, result), in §8.3
- <u>Event</u>, in §2.2
- event
 - attribute for Window, in §2.3
 - definition of, in §2.2
- event constructing steps, in §2.5
- EventInit, in §2.2
- event listener, in §2.7
- EventListener, in §2.7
- event listener list, in §2.7
- <u>EventListenerOptions</u>, in §2.7
- eventPhase, in §2.2
- <u>EventTarget</u>, in §2.7
- EventTarget(), in §2.7
- <u>Event(type)</u>, in §2.2
- Event(type, eventInitDict), in §2.2
- exclusive Text node, in §4.11
- expandEntityReferences, in §9.4
- extract, in §5.5
- extractContents(), in §5.5
- filter
 - attribute for Nodelterator, in §6.1
 - <u>attribute for TreeWalker</u>, in §6.2
 - o definition of, in §6
 - dfn for traversal, in §6
- FILTER_ACCEPT, in §6.3
- FILTER_REJECT, in §6.3
- FILTER SKIP, in §6.3
- find a slot, in §4.2.2.3
 find flattened slottables, in §4.2.2.3
- finding a slot, in §4.2.2.3
- finding flattened slottables, in §4.2.2.3
- finding slottables, in §4.2.2.3
- find slottables, in §4.2.2.3
- fire an event, in §2.10
- first child, in §1.1
- firstChild, in §4.4
- firstChild(), in §6.2
- firstElementChild, in §4.2.6
- FIRST ORDERED NODE TYPE, in §8.1
- <u>flatten</u>, in §2.7
- <u>flatten more</u>, in §2.7
- follow, in §3.2
- <u>following</u>, in §1.1
- get an attribute by name, in §4.9
- get an attribute by namespace and local name, in §4.9
- get an attribute value, in §4.9
- getAttributeNames(), in §4.9
- getAttributeNodeNS(namespace, localName), in §4.9
- getAttributeNode(qualifiedName), in §4.9
- getAttributeNS(namespace, localName), in §4.9
- getAttribute(qualifiedName), in §4.9
- getElementById(elementId), in §4.2.4

File an issue about the selected text

Names)

- method for Document, in §4.5
- method for Element, in §4.9
- getElementsByTagNameNS(namespace, localName)
 - method for Document, in §4.5
 - o method for Element, in §4.9
- getElementsByTagName(qualifiedName)
 - method for Document, in §4.5
 - o method for Element, in §4.9
- getFeature()
 - method for DOMImplementation, in §9.2
 - o method for Node, in §9.2
- getNamedItemNS(namespace, localName), in §4.9.1
- getNamedItem(gualifiedName), in §4.9.1
- getRootNode(), in §4.4
- getRootNode(options), in §4.4
- GetRootNodeOptions, in §4.4
- get the parent, in §2.7
- getUserData(), in §9.2
- handle attribute changes, in §4.9
- <u>handleEvent(event)</u>, in §2.7
- has an attribute, in §4.9
- hasAttributeNS(namespace, localName), in §4.9
- hasAttribute(qualifiedName), in §4.9
- hasAttributes()
 - method for Element, in §4.9
 - o method for Node, in §9.2
- hasChildNodes(), in §4.4
- <u>hasFeature()</u>, in §4.5.1
- host
 - o attribute for ShadowRoot, in §4.8
 - o dfn for DocumentFragment, in §4.7
- host-including inclusive ancestor, in §4.7
- HTMLCollection, in §4.2.10.2
- HTML document, in §4.5
- HTML-uppercased qualified name, in §4.9
- ID, in §4.9
- id, in §4.9
- <u>implementation</u>, in §4.5
- importNode(node), in §4.5
- importNode(node, deep), in §4.5
- in a document, in §4.2.1
- in a document tree, in §4.2.1
- inclusive ancestor, in §1.1
- inclusive descendant, in §1.1
- inclusive sibling, in §1.1
- index, in §1.1
- initCustomEvent(type), in §2.4
- initCustomEvent(type, bubbles), in §2.4
- <u>initCustomEvent(type, bubbles, cancelable)</u>, in §2.4
- initCustomEvent(type, bubbles, cancelable, detail), in §2.4
- initEvent(type), in §2.2
- initEvent(type, bubbles), in §2.2
- initEvent(type, bubbles, cancelable), in §2.2
- <u>initialize</u>, in §2.2
- initialized flag, in §2.2
- inner event creation steps, in §2.5
- inner invoke, in §2.9
- in passive listener flag, in §2.2
- <u>inputEncoding</u>, in §4.5
- insert

- dfn for live range, in §5.5
- insert adjacent, in §4.9
- insertAdjacentElement(where, element), in §4.9
- insertAdjacentText(where, data), in §4.9
- insertBefore(node, child), in §4.4
- insertData(offset, data), in §4.10
- insertion steps, in §4.2.3
- insertNode(node), in §5.5
- internal createElementNS steps, in §4.5
- internalSubset, in §9.2
- intersectsNode(node), in §5.5
- invalidIteratorState, in §8.1
- invocation target, in §2.2
- invocation-target-in-shadow-tree, in §2.2
- invoke, in §2.9
- is, in §4.5
- isConnected, in §4.4
- isDefaultNamespace(namespace), in §4.4
- isElementContentWhitespace, in §9.2
- isEqualNode(otherNode), in §4.4
- <u>isld</u>, in §9.2
- isPointInRange(node, offset), in §5.5
- isSameNode(otherNode), in §4.4
- isSupported, in §9.2
- isTrusted, in §2.2
- is value, in §4.9
- item(index)
 - method for DOMTokenList, in §7.1
 - o method for HTMLCollection, in §4.2.10.2
 - method for NamedNodeMap, in §4.9.1
 - method for NodeList, in §4.2.10.1
- iterateNext(), in §8.1
- iterator collection, in §6.1
- last child, in §1.1
- lastChild, in §4.4
- <u>lastChild()</u>, in §6.2<u>lastElementChild</u>, in §4.2.6
- legacy-canceled-activation behavior, in §2.7
- <u>legacy-pre-activation behavior</u>, in §2.7
- length
 - o attribute for CharacterData, in §4.10
 - o attribute for DOMTokenList, in §7.1
 - attribute for HTMLCollection, in §4.2.10.2
 - attribute for NamedNodeMap, in §4.9.1
 - o attribute for NodeList, in §4.2.10.1
 - dfn for Node, in §4.2
- <u>light tree</u>, in §4.2.2
- <u>limited-quirks mode</u>, in §4.5
- list of elements with class names classNames, in §4.4
- list of elements with namespace namespace and local name localName, in §4.4
- list of elements with qualified name qualifiedName, in §4.4
- live, in §4.2.10
- live collection, in §4.2.10
- <u>live ranges</u>, in §5.5
- local name
 - dfn for Attr, in §4.9.2
 - o dfn for Element, in §4.9
- localName
 - o attribute for Attr, in §4.9.2
 - o attribute for Element, in §4.9

File an issue about the selected text .2

- locate a namespace, in §4.4
- locate a namespace prefix, in §4.4
- locating a namespace prefix, in §4.4
- lookupNamespaceURI(prefix)
 - o method for Node, in §4.4
 - method for XPathNSResolver, in §8.3
- lookupPrefix(namespace), in §4.4
- matches(selectors), in §4.9
- mode
 - attribute for ShadowRoot, in §4.8
 - dfn for Document, in §4.5
 - o dfn for ShadowRoot, in §4.8
 - dict-member for ShadowRootInit, in §4.9
- MutationCallback, in §4.3.1
- MutationEvent, in §9.1
- MutationNameEvent, in §9.1
- MutationObserver, in §4.3.1
- MutationObserver(callback), in §4.3.1
- MutationObserverInit, in §4.3.1
- mutation observer microtask queued, in §4.3
- mutation observers, in §4.3
- MutationRecord, in §4.3.3
- name
 - o attribute for Attr, in §4.9.2
 - attribute for DocumentType, in §4.6
 - dfn for DocumentType, in §4.6
 - dfn for slot, in §4.2.2.1
 - dfn for slottable, in §4.2.2.2
- named attribute, in §4.9.2
- <u>namedItem(key)</u>, in §4.2.10.2
- namedItem(name), in §4.2.10.2
- NamedNodeMap, in §4.9.1
- NameList, in §9.2
- namespace
 - o dfn for Attr, in §4.9.2
 - o dfn for Element, in §4.9
- · namespace prefix
 - o dfn for Attr, in §4.9.2
 - o dfn for Element, in §4.9
- namespaceURI
 - o attribute for Attr, in §4.9.2
 - o attribute for Element, in §4.9
 - o attribute for Node, in §9.2
- <u>nextElementSibling</u>, in §4.2.7
- nextNode()
 - method for Nodelterator, in §6.1
 - o method for TreeWalker, in §6.2
- next sibling, in §1.1
- nextSibling
 - o attribute for MutationRecord, in §4.3.3
 - o attribute for Node, in §4.4
- nextSibling(), in §6.2
- Node, in §4.4
- node, in §5.2
- node document, in §4.4
- NodeFilter, in §6.3
- Nodelterator, in §6.1
- Nodelterator pre-removing steps, in §6.1
- node list, in §4.3.1
- NodeList, in §4.2.10.1

- nodes, in §4.2
- node tree, in §4.2
- nodeType, in §4.4
- nodeValue, in §4.4
- NonDocumentTypeChildNode, in §4.2.7
- NONE, in §2.2
- NonElementParentNode, in §4.2.4
- no-quirks mode, in §4.5
- <u>normalize()</u>, in §4.4
- normalizeDocument(), in §9.2
- Notation, in §9.2
- NOTATION NODE, in §4.4
- notations, in §9.2
- notify mutation observers, in §4.3
- NUMBER TYPE, in §8.1
- numberValue, in §8.1
- observer, in §4.3
- observe(target), in §4.3.1
- observe(target, options), in §4.3.1
- offset, in §5.2
- oldValue, in §4.3.3
- onabort
 - attribute for AbortSignal, in §3.2
 - dfn for AbortSignal, in §3.2
- once
 - o dfn for event listener, in §2.7
 - o dict-member for AddEventListenerOptions, in §2.7
- onslotchange
 - o attribute for ShadowRoot, in §4.8
 - o dfn for ShadowRoot, in §4.8
- "open", in §4.8
- <u>options</u>, in §4.3
- ORDERED_NODE_ITERATOR_TYPE, in §8.1
- ORDERED NODE SNAPSHOT TYPE, in §8.1
- ordered set parser, in §1.2
- ordered set serializer, in §1.2
- <u>origin</u>, in §4.5
- other applicable specifications, in §1
- <u>ownerDocument</u>, in §4.4
- ownerElement, in §4.9.2
- <u>parent</u>, in §1.1
- parent element, in §4.9
- parentElement, in §4.4
- ParentNode, in §4.2.6
- parentNode, in §4.4
- parentNode(), in §6.2
- partially contained, in §5.5
- participate, in §1.1
- participate in a tree, in §1.1
- participates in a tree, in §1.1
- passive
 - dfn for event listener, in §2.7
 - o dict-member for AddEventListenerOptions, in §2.7
- path, in §2.2
- pointer before reference, in §6.1
- pointerBeforeReferenceNode, in §6.1
- position, in §5.2
- potential event target, in §2.2
- preceding, in §1.1
- prefix

- o attribute for Element, in §4.9
- o attribute for Node, in §9.2
- pre-insert, in §4.2.3
- <u>prepend()</u>, in §4.2.6
- <u>prepend(...nodes)</u>, in §4.2.6
- <u>pre-remove</u>, in §4.2.3
- preventDefault(), in §2.2
- <u>previousElementSibling</u>, in §4.2.7
- previousNode()
 - o method for Nodelterator, in §6.1
 - method for TreeWalker, in §6.2
- previous sibling, in §1.1
- previousSibling
 - attribute for MutationRecord, in §4.3.3
 - o attribute for Node, in §4.4
- previousSibling(), in §6.2
- ProcessingInstruction, in §4.13
- PROCESSING INSTRUCTION NODE, in §4.4
- public ID, in §4.6
- publicId, in §4.6
- qualified name
 - o dfn for Attr, in §4.9.2
 - o dfn for Element, in §4.9
- <u>querySelectorAll(selectors)</u>, in §4.2.6
- <u>querySelector(selectors)</u>, in §4.2.6
- queue a mutation observer microtask, in §4.3
- queue a mutation record, in §4.3.2
- <u>queue a tree mutation record</u>, in §4.3.2
- quirks mode, in §4.5
- Range, in §5.5
- <u>range</u>, in §5.3
- Range(), in §5.5
- RangeException, in §9.3
- record queue, in §4.3.1
- reference, in §6.1
- referenceNode, in §6.1
- reflect, in §4.9
- <u>registered observer</u>, in §4.3
- registered observer list, in §4.3
- relatedTarget
 - o dfn for Event, in §2.2
 - o dfn for Event/path, in §2.2
- remove
 - definition of, in §4.2.3
 - o dfn for AbortSignal, in §3.2
- remove()
 - o method for ChildNode, in §4.2.8
 - method for DOMTokenList, in §7.1
- remove all event listeners, in §2.7
- remove an attribute, in §4.9
- remove an attribute by name, in §4.9
- remove an attribute by namespace and local name, in §4.9
- remove an event listener, in §2.7
- removeAttributeNode(attr), in §4.9
- removeAttributeNS(namespace, localName), in §4.9
- <u>removeAttribute(qualifiedName)</u>, in §4.9
- removeChild(child), in §4.4
- removed, in §2.7
- removedNodes, in §4.3.3
- removeEventListener(type, callback), in §2.7

File an issue about the selected text Dack, options), in §2.7

- removeNamedItemNS(namespace, localName), in §4.9.1
- removeNamedItem(gualifiedName), in §4.9.1
- <u>remove(...tokens)</u>, in §7.1
- remove(tokens), in §7.1
- <u>removing steps</u>, in §4.2.3
- <u>renameNode()</u>, in §9.2
- <u>replace</u>, in §4.2.3
- <u>replace all</u>, in §4.2.3
- replace an attribute, in §4.9
- replaceChild(node, child), in §4.4
- replaceChildren(), in §4.2.6
- replaceChildren(...nodes), in §4.2.6
- replace data, in §4.10
- replaceData(offset, count, data), in §4.10
- replace(token, newToken), in §7.1
- replaceWholeText(), in §9.2
- replaceWith(), in §4.2.8
- replaceWith(...nodes), in §4.2.8
- represented by the collection, in §4.2.10
- <u>resultType</u>, in §8.1
- retarget, in §4.8
- <u>retargeting</u>, in §4.8
- returnValue, in §2.2
- root
 - o attribute for Nodelterator, in §6.1
 - attribute for TreeWalker, in §6.2
 - o dfn for live range, in §5.5
 - dfn for traversal, in §6
 - o dfn for tree, in §1.1
- root-of-closed-tree, in §2.2
- schemaTypeInfo
 - o attribute for Attr, in §9.2
 - o attribute for Element, in §9.2
- scope-match a selectors string, in §1.3
- select, in §5.5
- selectNodeContents(node), in §5.5
- selectNode(node), in §5.5
- <u>serialize steps</u>, in §7.1
- set an attribute, in §4.9
- set an attribute value, in §4.9
- set an existing attribute value, in §4.9.2
- <u>setAttributeNode(attr)</u>, in §4.9
- setAttributeNodeNS(attr), in §4.9
- setAttributeNS(namespace, qualifiedName, value), in §4.9
- setAttribute(qualifiedName, value), in §4.9
- setEndAfter(node), in §5.5
- setEndBefore(node), in §5.5
- setEnd(node, offset), in §5.5
- setIdAttribute(), in §9.2
- <u>setIdAttributeNode()</u>, in §9.2
- <u>setIdAttributeNS()</u>, in §9.2
- setNamedItem(attr), in §4.9.1
- setNamedItemNS(attr), in §4.9.1
- setStartAfter(node), in §5.5
- setStartBefore(node), in §5.5
- setStart(node, offset), in §5.5
- set the canceled flag, in §2.2
- set the end, in §5.5
- set the start, in §5.5
- setUserData(), in §9.2

File an issue about the selected text

- shadow host, in §4.9
- shadow-including ancestor, in §4.8
- shadow-including descendant, in §4.8
- shadow-including inclusive ancestor, in §4.8
- shadow-including inclusive descendant, in §4.8
- Shadow-including preorder, depth-first traversal, in §4.8
- shadow-including root, in §4.8
- shadow-including tree order, in §4.8
- shadow root
 - definition of, in §4.8
 - o dfn for Element, in §4.9
- ShadowRoot, in §4.8
- shadowRoot, in §4.9
- ShadowRootInit, in §4.9
- ShadowRootMode, in §4.8
- shadow tree, in §4.2.2
- SHOW ALL, in §6.3
- SHOW ATTRIBUTE, in §6.3
- SHOW CDATA SECTION, in §6.3
- SHOW COMMENT, in §6.3
- SHOW DOCUMENT, in §6.3
- SHOW DOCUMENT FRAGMENT, in §6.3
- SHOW DOCUMENT TYPE, in §6.3
- SHOW ELEMENT, in §6.3
- SHOW ENTITY, in §6.3
- SHOW ENTITY REFERENCE, in §6.3
- SHOW_NOTATION, in §6.3
- SHOW PROCESSING INSTRUCTION, in §6.3
- **SHOW TEXT**, in §6.3
- <u>sibling</u>, in §1.1
- signal
 - attribute for AbortController, in §3.1
 - o dfn for AbortController, in §3.1
- signal abort, in §3.2
- signal a slot change, in §4.2.2.5
- <u>signal slots</u>, in §4.2.2.5
- singleNodeValue, in §8.1
- slot
 - o attribute for Element, in §4.9
 - o definition of, in §4.2.2.1
- slot-in-closed-tree, in §2.2
- Slottable, in §4.2.9
- slottable, in §4.2.2.2
- snapshotItem(index), in §8.1
- snapshotLength, in §8.1
- source, in §4.3
- specified, in §4.9.2
- split a Text node, in §4.11
- <u>splitText(offset)</u>, in §4.11
- <u>srcElement</u>, in §2.2
- start, in §5.3
- startContainer
 - attribute for AbstractRange, in §5.3
 - dict-member for StaticRangeInit, in §5.4
- start node, in §5.3
- start offset, in §5.3
- startOffset
 - o attribute for AbstractRange, in §5.3
 - o dict-member for StaticRangeInit, in §5.4
- START TO END, in §5.5

- static collection, in §4.2.10
- <u>StaticRange</u>, in §5.4
- StaticRange(init), in §5.4
- StaticRangeInit, in §5.4
- stopImmediatePropagation(), in §2.2
- stop immediate propagation flag, in §2.2
- stopPropagation(), in §2.2
- stop propagation flag, in §2.2
- strictErrorChecking, in §9.2
- stringification behavior, in §7.1
- stringificationbehavior, in §5.5
- string replace all, in §4.4
- STRING TYPE, in §8.1
- stringValue, in §8.1
- <u>substring data</u>, in §4.10
- substringData(offset, count), in §4.10
- <u>subtree</u>, in §4.3.1
- supported tokens, in §7.1
- supports(token), in §7.1
- <u>surroundContents(newParent)</u>, in §5.5
- <u>system ID</u>, in §4.6
- systemId, in §4.6
- tagName, in §4.9
- takeRecords(), in §4.3.1
- target
 - o attribute for Event, in §2.2
 - o attribute for MutationRecord, in §4.3.3
 - attribute for ProcessingInstruction, in §4.13
 - o dfn for Event, in §2.2
 - o dfn for ProcessingInstruction, in §4.13
- <u>Text</u>, in §4.11
- Text(), in §4.11
- textContent, in §4.4
- <u>Text(data)</u>, in §4.11
- TEXT NODE, in §4.4
- timeStamp, in §2.2
- toggleAttribute(gualifiedName), in §4.9
- toggleAttribute(qualifiedName, force), in §4.9
- toggle(token), in §7.1
- toggle(token, force), in §7.1
- token set, in §7.1
- touch target list
 - o dfn for Event, in §2.2
 - dfn for Event/path, in §2.2
- transient registered observer, in §4.3
- traverse, in §6.1
- traverse children, in §6.2
- traverse siblings, in §6.2
- tree, in §1.1
- tree order, in §1.1
- <u>TreeWalker</u>, in §6.2
- type
 - o attribute for Event, in §2.2
 - attribute for MutationRecord, in §4.3.3
 - o dfn for Document, in §4.5
 - dfn for event listener, in §2.7
- TypeInfo, in §9.2
- UNORDERED NODE ITERATOR TYPE, in §8.1
- UNORDERED NODE SNAPSHOT TYPE, in §8.1
- update steps, in §7.1

- o attribute for Document, in §4.5
- o dfn for Document, in §4.5
- <u>UserDataHandler</u>, in §9.2
- validate, in §1.4
- validate and extract, in §1.4
- validation steps, in §7.1
- value
 - attribute for Attr, in §4.9.2
 - attribute for DOMTokenList, in §7.1
 - o dfn for Attr, in §4.9.2
- webkitMatchesSelector(selectors), in §4.9
- whatToShow
 - attribute for Nodelterator, in §6.1
 - o attribute for TreeWalker, in §6.2
 - o dfn for traversal, in §6
- wholeText, in §4.11
- XML document, in §4.5
- XMLDocument, in §4.5
- xmlEncoding, in §9.2
- xmlStandalone, in §9.2
- xmlVersion, in §9.2
- XPathEvaluator, in §8.4
- XPathEvaluator(), in §8.4
- XPathEvaluatorBase, in §8.3
- XPathExpression, in §8.2
- XPathNSResolver, in §8.3
- XPathResult, in §8.1

Terms defined by reference §

- [CONSOLE] defines the following terms:
 - report a warning to the console
- [CSSOM-VIEW] defines the following terms:
 - getBoundingClientRect()
 - getClientRects()
- [ECMASCRIPT] defines the following terms:
 - realm
 - surrounding agent
- [ENCODING] defines the following terms:
 - encoding
 - name
 - o utf-8
- [HR-TIME] defines the following terms:
 - DOMHighResTimeStamp
 - clock resolution
 - o time origin
- [HTML] defines the following terms:
 - BeforeUnloadEvent
 - CEReactions
 - DOMStringList
 - DragEvent
 - EventHandler
 - HTMLElement
 - HTMLHtmlElement
 - HTMLSlotElement
 - HTMLUnknownElement
 - HashChangeEvent
 - MessageEvent

- Window
- area
- · associated document
- body
- browsing context (for Document)
- click()
- constructor
- current global object
- o custom element constructor
- customized built-in element
- disable shadow
- document base url
- enqueue a custom element callback reaction
- o enqueue a custom element upgrade reaction
- event handler
- event handler event type
- · event handler idl attribute
- global object
- head
- html
- html parser
- o in parallel
- input
- local name
- · look up a custom element definition
- microtask
- name
- o opaque origin
- origin
- o queue a microtask
- relevant agent
- relevant global object
- relevant realm
- report the exception
- script
- similar-origin window agent
- slot
- slotchange
- template
- title
- try to upgrade an element
- upgrade an element
- valid custom element name
- [INFRA] defines the following terms:
 - o append (for set)
 - o ascii case-insensitive
 - o ascii lowercase
 - ascii uppercase
 - ascii whitespace
 - break
 - clone
 - o code unit
 - concatenation
 - contain
 - continue
 - empty
 - enqueue
 - exist (for map)
 - for each (for map)
 - html namespace

- insert
- is empty
- is not empty
- length
- list
- o map
- o ordered set
- o prepend
- queue
- remove
- replace (for set)
- set (for map)
- size
- split on ascii whitespace
- struct
- svg namespace
- tuple
- xml namespace
- xmlns namespace
- [SELECTORS4] defines the following terms:
 - o :defined
 - :scope element
 - o match a selector against a tree
 - o match a selector against an element
 - o parse a selector
 - scoping root
- [SERVICE-WORKERS] defines the following terms:
 - ServiceWorkerGlobalScope
 - · has ever been evaluated flag
 - script resource
 - o service worker
 - service worker events
 - set of event types to handle
- [UIEVENTS] defines the following terms:
 - CompositionEvent
 - FocusEvent
 - KeyboardEvent
 - MouseEvent
 - UIEvent
 - detail
- [URL] defines the following terms:
 - url
 - url serializer
- [WEBIDL] defines the following terms:
 - AbortError
 - DOMException
 - DOMString
 - DOMTimeStamp
 - Exposed
 - HierarchyRequestError
 - InUseAttributeError
 - IndexSizeError
 - InvalidCharacterError
 - InvalidNodeTypeError
 - InvalidStateError
 - LegacyNullToEmptyString
 - LegacyUnenumerableNamedProperties
 - LegacyUnforgeable
 - NamespaceError
 - NewObject

- NotSupportedError
- PutForwards
- Replaceable
- SameObject
- SyntaxError
- USVString
- Unscopable
- WrongDocumentError
- a new promise
- any
- o associated realm
- boolean
- o call a user object's operation
- construct
- o converted to an idl value
- dictionary
- identifier
- invoke
- reject
- o resolve
- sequence
- short
- supported property indices
- supported property names
- this
- throw
- undefined
- unrestricted double
- unsigned long
- unsigned short

References §

Normative References §

[CONSOLE]

Dominic Farolino; Robert Kowalski; Terin Stock. Console Standard. Living Standard. URL: https://console.spec.whatwg.org/

[DEVICE-ORIENTATION]

Rich Tibbett; et al. <u>DeviceOrientation Event Specification</u>. URL: <u>https://w3c.github.io/deviceorientation/</u>

[ECMASCRIPT]

ECMAScript Language Specification. URL: https://tc39.es/ecma262/

[ENCODING]

Anne van Kesteren. Encoding Standard. Living Standard. URL: https://encoding.spec.whatwg.org/

[HR-TIME]

Ilya Grigorik. High Resolution Time Level 2. URL: https://w3c.github.io/hr-time/

Anne van Kesteren; et al. HTML Standard. Living Standard. URL: https://html.spec.whatwg.org/multipage/

[INFRA]

Anne van Kesteren; Domenic Denicola. Infra Standard. Living Standard. URL: https://infra.spec.whatwg.org/

[SELECTORS4]

Elika Etemad; Tab Atkins Jr.. Selectors Level 4. URL: https://drafts.csswq.org/selectors/

[SERVICE-WORKERS]

Alex Russell; et al. Service Workers 1. URL: https://w3c.github.io/ServiceWorker/

[TOUCH-EVENTS]

Doug Schepers; et al. Touch Events. URL: https://w3c.github.io/touch-events/

[UIEVENTS]

Gary Kacmarcik; Travis Leithead; Doug Schepers. <u>UI Events</u>. URL: https://w3c.github.io/uievents/

Anne van Kesteren. <u>URL Standard</u>. Living Standard. URL: https://url.spec.whatwg.org/

[WEBIDL]

Boris Zbarsky. Web IDL. URL: https://heycam.github.io/webidl/

Tim Bray; et al. Extensible Markup Language (XML) 1.0 (Fifth Edition). 26 November 2008. REC. URL: https://www.w3.org/TR/xml/

[XML-NAMES]

Tim Bray; et al. Namespaces in XML 1.0 (Third Edition). 8 December 2009. REC. URL: https://www.w3.org/TR/xml-names/

Informative References §

[CSSOM-VIEW]

Simon Pieters. CSSOM View Module. URL: https://drafts.csswg.org/cssom-view/

[DOM-Level-2-Traversal-Range]

Joseph Kesselman; et al. <u>Document Object Model (DOM) Level 2 Traversal and Range Specification</u>. 13 November 2000. File an issue about the selected text OM-Level-2-Traversal-Range/

[DOM-Level-3-Core]

Arnaud Le Hors; et al. <u>Document Object Model (DOM) Level 3 Core Specification</u>. 7 April 2004. REC. URL: <u>https://www.w3.org/TR/DOM-Level-3-Core/</u>

[DOM-Level-3-XPath]

Ray Whitmer. <u>Document Object Model (DOM) Level 3 XPath Specification</u>. 26 February 2004. NOTE. URL: <u>https://www.w3.org/TR/DOM-Level-3-XPath/</u>

[DOM-Parsing]

Travis Leithead. DOM Parsing and Serialization. URL: https://w3c.github.io/DOM-Parsing/

[ELEMENTTRAVERSAL]

Doug Schepers; Robin Berjon. <u>Element Traversal Specification</u>. 22 December 2008. REC. URL: <u>https://www.w3.org/TR/ElementTraversal/</u>

[FULLSCREEN]

Philip Jägenstedt. Fullscreen API Standard. Living Standard. URL: https://fullscreen.spec.whatwg.org/

[INDEXEDDB]

Nikunj Mehta; et al. Indexed Database API. URL: https://w3c.github.io/IndexedDB/

[SELECTORS-API2]

Lachlan Hunt. Selectors API Level 2. URL: https://dev.w3.org/2006/webapi/selectors-api2/

[UIEVENTS-20031107]

Philippe Le Hégaret; Tim Pixley. <u>Document Object Model (DOM) Level 3 Events Specification</u>. URL: <u>https://www.w3.org/TR/2003/NOTE-DOM-Level-3-Events-20031107</u>

[XPath]

James Clark; Steven DeRose. <u>XML Path Language (XPath) Version 1.0</u>. 16 November 1999. REC. URL: https://www.w3.org/TR/xpath-10/

IDL Index §

```
ID
     [Exposed = (Window, Worker, AudioWorklet)]
L
     interface Event {
       constructor(DOMString type, optional EventInit eventInitDict = {});
       readonly attribute DOMString type;
       readonly attribute <a href="EventTarget">EventTarget</a>? <a href="target">target</a>;
       readonly attribute <a href="EventTarget">EventTarget</a>? <a href="screen: srcElement">srcElement</a>; // historical
       readonly attribute <a><u>EventTarget</u>?</a>? <a><u>currentTarget</u>;</a>
       sequence \langle EventTarget \rangle composedPath();
       const unsigned short NONE = 0;
       const unsigned short CAPTURING PHASE = 1;
       const unsigned short AT TARGET = 2;
       const unsigned short BUBBLING PHASE = 3;
       readonly attribute unsigned short eventPhase;
       undefined stopPropagation();
                  attribute <a href="boolean">boolean</a> cancelBubble; // historical alias of .stopPropagation
       undefined stopImmediatePropagation();
       readonly attribute boolean bubbles;
       readonly attribute boolean cancelable;
                  attribute boolean returnValue; // historical
       undefined preventDefault();
       readonly attribute boolean defaultPrevented;
       readonly attribute boolean composed;
       [LegacyUnforgeable] readonly attribute boolean isTrusted;
       readonly attribute <a href="DOMHighResTimeStamp">DOMHighResTimeStamp</a>; timeStamp;
       undefined initEvent (DOMString type, optional boolean bubbles = false, optional boolean cancelable =
     false); // historical
     };
     dictionary EventInit {
       boolean bubbles = false;
       <u>boolean</u> <u>cancelable</u> = false;
       boolean composed = false;
     };
     partial interface Window {
       [Replaceable] readonly attribute any event; // historical
     };
```

```
interface <u>CustomEvent</u> : <u>Event</u> {
      constructor(DOMString type, optional CustomEventInit eventInitDict = {});
      readonly attribute any detail;
      <u>undefined initCustomEvent(DOMString type</u>, optional <u>boolean bubbles</u> = false, optional <u>boolean cancelable</u> =
    false, optional any detail = null); // historical
    };
    dictionary CustomEventInit : EventInit {
      any detail = null;
    };
    [Exposed = (Window, Worker, AudioWorklet)]
    interface EventTarget {
      constructor();
      undefined addEventListener (DOMString type, EventListener? callback, optional (AddEventListenerOptions or
    boolean options = {});
      undefined removeEventListener(DOMString type, EventListener? callback, optional (EventListenerOptions or
    boolean options = {});
      boolean dispatchEvent(Event event);
    };
    callback interface <u>EventListener</u> {
      undefined handleEvent (Event event);
    };
    dictionary EventListenerOptions {
      boolean capture = false;
    };
    dictionary AddEventListenerOptions : EventListenerOptions {
      <u>boolean</u> <u>passive</u> = false;
      <u>boolean</u> <u>once</u> = false;
    };
    [Exposed=(Window, Worker)]
    interface AbortController {
      constructor();
      [SameObject] readonly attribute AbortSignal signal;
      undefined abort();
    };
    [<u>Exposed</u>=(Window, Worker)]
    interface AbortSignal : EventTarget {
     readonly attribute boolean aborted;
      attribute <u>EventHandler</u> <u>onabort</u>;
File an issue about the selected text Node {
```

```
Element? getElementById(DOMString elementId);
<u>Document</u> includes <u>NonElementParentNode</u>;
<u>DocumentFragment includes NonElementParentNode</u>;
interface mixin DocumentOrShadowRoot {
};
<u>Document includes DocumentOrShadowRoot;</u>
ShadowRoot includes DocumentOrShadowRoot;
interface mixin ParentNode {
  [SameObject] readonly attribute HTMLCollection children;
  readonly attribute <a>Element</a>? <a>firstElementChild</a>;</a>
  readonly attribute <a>Element</a>? <a>lastElementChild</a>;</a>
  readonly attribute unsigned long childElementCount;
  [CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined prepend((Node or DOMString)... nodes);
  [CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined append((Node or DOMString)... nodes);
  [CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined replaceChildren((Node or DOMString)... nodes);
  Element? querySelector (DOMString selectors);
  [NewObject] NodeList querySelectorAll(DOMString selectors);
};
<u>Document</u> includes <u>ParentNode</u>;
<u>DocumentFragment</u> includes <u>ParentNode</u>;
<u>Element</u> includes <u>ParentNode</u>;
interface mixin NonDocumentTypeChildNode {
  readonly attribute <a>Element</a>? <a>previous</a>Element</a>Sibling;
  readonly attribute <a>Element</a>? <a>nextElementSibling</a>;</a>
Element includes NonDocumentTypeChildNode;
CharacterData includes NonDocumentTypeChildNode;
interface mixin ChildNode {
  [CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined before ((Node or DOMString)... nodes);
  [CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined after((Node or DOMString)... nodes);
  [CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined replaceWith((Node or DOMString)... nodes);
  [CEReactions, Unscopable] undefined remove();
DocumentType includes ChildNode;
Element includes ChildNode;
CharacterData includes ChildNode;
interface mixin Slottable {
  readonly attribute <a href="https://html/HTMLSlotElement">HTMLSlotElement</a>? <a href="mailto:assignedSlot">assignedSlot</a>;
};
Element includes Slottable;
<u>Text</u> includes <u>Slottable</u>;
```

```
interface \ \underline{NodeList} \ \{
       getter Node? item(unsigned long index);
      readonly attribute unsigned long length;
      iterable < <u>Node</u> >;
    [<u>Exposed</u>=Window, <u>LegacyUnenumerableNamedProperties</u>]
    interface HTMLCollection {
      readonly attribute <u>unsigned long length</u>;
      getter Element? item(unsigned long index);
      getter <u>Element</u>? <u>namedItem(DOMString name)</u>;
    };
    [Exposed=Window]
    interface MutationObserver {
      constructor(MutationCallback callback);
      undefined observe(Node target, optional MutationObserverInit options = {});
      undefined disconnect();
      sequence \( MutationRecord \> \takeRecords ();
    };
    callback MutationCallback = undefined (sequence \( MutationRecord \) mutations, MutationObserver observer);
    dictionary MutationObserverInit {
      boolean childList = false;
      boolean attributes;
      boolean characterData;
      <u>boolean</u> <u>subtree</u> = false;
      boolean attributeOldValue;
      boolean characterDataOldValue;
      sequence<DOMString> attributeFilter;
    };
     [Exposed=Window]
    interface MutationRecord {
      readonly attribute DOMString type;
       [SameObject] readonly attribute Node target;
       [SameObject] readonly attribute NodeList addedNodes;
       [SameObject] readonly attribute NodeList removedNodes;
      readonly attribute <a href="Node">Node</a>? <a href="previousSibling">previousSibling</a>;
      readonly attribute <a href="Node">Node</a>? <a href="nextSibling">nextSibling</a>;
      readonly attribute <u>DOMString</u>? <u>attributeName</u>;
      readonly attribute <u>DOMString</u>? <u>attributeNamespace</u>;
      readonly attribute <a href="DOMString">DOMString</a>? <a href="oldValue">oldValue</a>;
    };
    [Exposed=Window]
    interface \ \underline{Node} \ : \ \underline{EventTarget} \ \{
      const <u>unsigned short</u> <u>ELEMENT NODE</u> = 1;
<u>File an issue about the selected text</u> <u>NODE</u> = 2;
```

```
const unsigned short TEXT NODE = 3;
const unsigned short CDATA SECTION NODE = 4;
const unsigned short ENTITY REFERENCE NODE = 5; // historical
const unsigned short ENTITY NODE = 6; // historical
const unsigned short PROCESSING INSTRUCTION NODE = 7;
const unsigned short COMMENT NODE = 8;
const unsigned short DOCUMENT NODE = 9;
const unsigned short DOCUMENT TYPE NODE = 10;
const unsigned short DOCUMENT FRAGMENT NODE = 11;
const unsigned short NOTATION NODE = 12; // historical
readonly attribute <u>unsigned short</u> <u>nodeType</u>;
readonly attribute DOMString nodeName;
readonly attribute <u>USVString baseURI</u>;
readonly attribute boolean isConnected;
readonly attribute <a href="Document">Document</a>? <a href="OwnerDocument">ownerDocument</a>;
Node getRootNode(optional GetRootNodeOptions options = {});
readonly attribute Node? parentNode;
readonly attribute <a>Element</a>? <a>parentElement</a>;</a>
boolean hasChildNodes();
[SameObject] readonly attribute NodeList childNodes;
readonly attribute Node? firstChild;
readonly attribute Node? lastChild;
readonly attribute Node? previousSibling;
readonly attribute Node? nextSibling;
[\underline{CEReactions}] \ attribute \ \underline{DOMString}? \ \underline{nodeValue};
[CEReactions] attribute DOMString? textContent;
[CEReactions] undefined normalize();
[CEReactions, NewObject] Node cloneNode (optional boolean deep = false);
<u>boolean</u> <u>isEqualNode</u>(<u>Node</u>? <u>otherNode</u>);
<u>boolean</u> <u>isSameNode</u> (<u>Node</u>? <u>otherNode</u>); // historical alias of ===
const unsigned short DOCUMENT POSITION DISCONNECTED = 0x01;
const unsigned short DOCUMENT POSITION PRECEDING = 0x02;
const unsigned short DOCUMENT POSITION FOLLOWING = 0x04;
const <u>unsigned short</u> <u>DOCUMENT POSITION CONTAINS</u> = 0x08;
const <u>unsigned short DOCUMENT POSITION CONTAINED BY</u> = 0x10;
const <u>unsigned short</u> <u>DOCUMENT POSITION IMPLEMENTATION SPECIFIC</u> = 0x20;
<u>unsigned short</u> <u>compareDocumentPosition(Node other)</u>;
<u>boolean</u> <u>contains</u> (<u>Node</u>? <u>other</u>);
DOMString? lookupPrefix(DOMString? namespace);
DOMString? lookupNamespaceURI (DOMString? prefix);
boolean isDefaultNamespace(DOMString? namespace);
```

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org 138/146

File an issue about the selected text e(Node node, Node? child);

```
[CEReactions] Node appendChild(Node node);
  [CEReactions] Node replaceChild(Node node, Node child);
  [CEReactions] Node removeChild(Node child);
};
dictionary GetRootNodeOptions {
  boolean composed = false;
};
[<u>Exposed</u>=Window]
interface <u>Document</u>: <u>Node</u> {
  constructor();
  [SameObject] readonly attribute DOMImplementation implementation;
  readonly attribute <u>USVString URL</u>;
  readonly attribute <u>USVString documentURI</u>;
  readonly attribute <u>DOMString</u> <u>compatMode</u>;
  readonly attribute <a href="DOMString">DOMString</a> <a href="characterSet">characterSet</a>;
  readonly attribute DOMString charset; // historical alias of .characterSet
  readonly attribute DOMString inputEncoding; // historical alias of .characterSet
  readonly attribute <u>DOMString contentType;</u>
  readonly attribute <a href="DocumentType">DocumentType</a>? <a href="doctype">doctype</a>;
  readonly attribute <a>Element</a>? <a>documentElement</a>;</a>
  <u>HTMLCollection</u> <u>getElementsByTagName</u> (<u>DOMString</u> <u>qualifiedName</u>);
  HTMLCollection getElementsByTagNameNS (DOMString? namespace, DOMString localName);
  <u>HTMLCollection</u> <u>getElementsByClassName</u>(<u>DOMString</u> <u>classNames</u>);
  [CEReactions, NewObject] Element createElement(DOMString localName, optional (DOMString or
ElementCreationOptions) options = {});
  [CEReactions, NewObject] Element createElementNS (DOMString? namespace, DOMString qualifiedName, optional
(<u>DOMString</u> or <u>ElementCreationOptions</u>) <u>options</u> = {});
  [NewObject] DocumentFragment createDocumentFragment();
  [NewObject] Text createTextNode(DOMString data);
  [NewObject] CDATASection createCDATASection (DOMString data);
  [NewObject] Comment createComment (DOMString data);
  [NewObject] ProcessingInstruction createProcessingInstruction(DOMString target, DOMString data);
  [CEReactions, NewObject] Node importNode (Node node, optional boolean deep = false);
  [CEReactions] Node adoptNode (Node node);
  [NewObject] Attr createAttribute(DOMString localName);
  [NewObject] Attr createAttributeNS(DOMString? namespace, DOMString qualifiedName);
  [NewObject] Event createEvent (DOMString interface); // historical
  [NewObject] Range createRange();
  // NodeFilter.SHOW_ALL = 0xFFFFFFFF
  [NewObject] NodeIterator createNodeIterator(Node root, optional unsigned long whatToShow = 0xFFFFFFFF,
```

File an issue about the selected text

139/146

```
optional NodeFilter? filter = null);
  [NewObject] TreeWalker createTreeWalker (Node root, optional unsigned long whatToShow = 0xFFFFFFFF,
optional NodeFilter? filter = null);
};
[Exposed=Window]
interface XMLDocument : Document {};
dictionary ElementCreationOptions {
  DOMString is;
};
[Exposed=Window]
interface DOMImplementation {
  [NewObject] DocumentType createDocumentType (DOMString qualifiedName, DOMString publicId, DOMString
systemId);
  [NewObject] XMLDocument createDocument (DOMString? namespace, [LegacyNullToEmptyString] DOMString
qualifiedName, optional DocumentType? doctype = null);
  [NewObject] Document createHTMLDocument (optional DOMString title);
  boolean hasFeature(); // useless; always returns true
};
[Exposed=Window]
interface DocumentType : Node {
 readonly attribute DOMString name;
 readonly attribute <a href="DOMString publicId">DOMString publicId</a>;
 readonly attribute <u>DOMString</u> <u>systemId</u>;
};
[Exposed=Window]
interface DocumentFragment : Node {
  constructor();
};
[<u>Exposed</u>=Window]
\underline{ interface \ \underline{ShadowRoot}} \ : \ \underline{ DocumentFragment} \ \ \{
 readonly attribute <a href="mailto:ShadowRootMode">ShadowRootMode</a> mode;
 readonly attribute Element host;
  attribute EventHandler onslotchange;
};
enum ShadowRootMode { "open", "closed" };
[Exposed=Window]
interface <u>Element</u>: <u>Node</u> {
  readonly attribute DOMString? namespaceURI;
  readonly attribute <a href="DOMString">DOMString</a>? <a href="prefix">prefix</a>;
  readonly attribute DOMString localName;
  readonly attribute <u>DOMString tagName</u>;
                   ing id;
```

https://dom.spec.whatwg.org

```
[CEReactions] attribute DOMString className;
      [SameObject, PutForwards=value] readonly attribute DOMTokenList classList;
      [CEReactions, Unscopable] attribute DOMString slot;
      boolean hasAttributes();
      [SameObject] readonly attribute NamedNodeMap attributes;
      sequence < DOMString > getAttributeNames ();
      DOMString? getAttribute(DOMString qualifiedName);
      <u>DOMString</u>? <u>getAttributeNS</u>(<u>DOMString</u>? <u>namespace</u>, <u>DOMString</u> <u>localName</u>);
      [CEReactions] undefined setAttribute (DOMString qualifiedName, DOMString value);
      [CEReactions] undefined setAttributeNS(DOMString? namespace, DOMString qualifiedName, DOMString value);
      [CEReactions] undefined removeAttribute(DOMString qualifiedName);
      [CEReactions] undefined removeAttributeNS (DOMString? namespace, DOMString localName);
      [CEReactions] boolean toggleAttribute(DOMString qualifiedName, optional boolean force);
      <u>boolean</u> <u>hasAttribute</u>(<u>DOMString</u> <u>qualifiedName</u>);
      <u>boolean</u> <u>hasAttributeNS(DOMString? namespace, DOMString localName)</u>;
      <u>Attr? getAttributeNode (DOMString qualifiedName)</u>;
      <u>Attr? getAttributeNodeNS (DOMString? namespace, DOMString localName)</u>;
      [CEReactions] Attr? setAttributeNode(Attr attr);
      [CEReactions] Attr? setAttributeNodeNS(Attr attr);
      [CEReactions] Attr removeAttributeNode(Attr attr);
      ShadowRoot attachShadow(ShadowRootInit init);
      readonly attribute <a href="ShadowRoot">ShadowRoot</a>; <a href="shadowRoot">shadowRoot</a>;
      Element? closest (DOMString selectors);
      <u>boolean matches (DOMString selectors)</u>;
      boolean webkitMatchesSelector(DOMString selectors); // historical alias of .matches
      HTMLCollection getElementsByTagName (DOMString qualifiedName);
      HTMLCollection getElementsByTagNameNS (DOMString? namespace, DOMString localName);
      <u>HTMLCollection</u> <u>getElementsByClassName</u>(<u>DOMString</u> <u>classNames</u>);
      [CEReactions] Element? insertAdjacentElement(DOMString where, Element element); // historical
      undefined insertAdjacentText(DOMString where, DOMString data); // historical
    };
    dictionary ShadowRootInit {
      required <a href="ShadowRootMode">ShadowRootMode</a> mode;
      <u>boolean</u> <u>delegatesFocus</u> = false;
    [Exposed=Window,
     <u>LegacyUnenumerableNamedProperties</u>]
    interface NamedNodeMap {
      readonly attribute unsigned long length;
      getter Attr? item(unsigned long index);
      getter Attr? getNamedItem(DOMString qualifiedName);
```

```
[CEReactions] Attr? setNamedItem(Attr attr);
  [CEReactions] Attr? setNamedItemNS(Attr attr);
  [CEReactions] Attr removeNamedItem(DOMString qualifiedName);
  [CEReactions] Attr removeNamedItemNS (DOMString? namespace, DOMString localName);
};
[<u>Exposed</u>=Window]
interface Attr : Node {
  readonly attribute <a href="DOMString">DOMString</a>? <a href="namespaceURI">namespaceURI</a>;
  readonly attribute <a href="DOMString">DOMString</a>? <a href="prefix">prefix</a>;
  readonly attribute DOMString localName;
  readonly attribute DOMString name;
  [CEReactions] attribute DOMString value;
 readonly attribute <a>Element</a>? <a>ownerElement</a>;</a>
  readonly attribute boolean specified; // useless; always returns true
[Exposed=Window]
interface CharacterData : Node {
  attribute [LegacyNullToEmptyString] DOMString data;
  readonly attribute unsigned long length;
  <u>DOMString substringData(unsigned long offset, unsigned long count)</u>;
  undefined appendData(DOMString data);
  <u>undefined</u> <u>insertData(unsigned long offset, DOMString data)</u>;
  undefined deleteData (unsigned long offset, unsigned long count);
  undefined replaceData (unsigned long offset, unsigned long count, DOMString data);
};
[Exposed=Window]
interface Text : CharacterData {
  constructor(optional DOMString data = "");
  [NewObject] Text splitText(unsigned long offset);
  readonly attribute <a href="DOMString">DOMString</a> wholeText;
};
[Exposed=Window]
interface CDATASection : Text {
};
[Exposed=Window]
interface ProcessingInstruction : CharacterData {
  readonly attribute DOMString target;
};
[<u>Exposed</u>=Window]
interface Comment : CharacterData {
  constructor(optional DOMString data = "");
};
[Exposed=Window]
interface \ \underline{AbstractRange} \ \{
```

File an issue about the selected text ontainer;

```
readonly attribute <u>unsigned long startOffset</u>;
  readonly attribute Node endContainer;
 readonly attribute unsigned long endOffset;
 readonly attribute boolean collapsed;
dictionary StaticRangeInit {
 required Node startContainer;
 required unsigned long startOffset;
 required Node endContainer;
 required unsigned long endOffset;
};
[Exposed=Window]
interface StaticRange : AbstractRange {
 constructor(StaticRangeInit init);
};
[Exposed=Window]
interface Range : AbstractRange {
 constructor();
 readonly attribute Node commonAncestorContainer;
 <u>undefined</u> <u>setStart(Node node, unsigned long offset)</u>;
 undefined setEnd(Node node, unsigned long offset);
 <u>undefined</u> <u>setStartBefore(Node node)</u>;
 <u>undefined</u> <u>setStartAfter(Node node)</u>;
 undefined setEndBefore(Node node);
  undefined setEndAfter(Node node);
  <u>undefined</u> <u>collapse</u>(optional <u>boolean</u> <u>toStart</u> = false);
 undefined selectNode(Node node);
 undefined selectNodeContents(Node node);
  const unsigned short START TO START = 0;
  const unsigned short START TO END = 1;
  const unsigned short END TO END = 2;
  const unsigned short END TO START = 3;
  short compareBoundaryPoints(unsigned short how, Range sourceRange);
  [CEReactions] undefined deleteContents();
  [CEReactions, NewObject] DocumentFragment extractContents();
  [CEReactions, NewObject] DocumentFragment cloneContents();
  [CEReactions] undefined insertNode (Node node);
  [CEReactions] undefined surroundContents(Node newParent);
  [NewObject] Range cloneRange();
 undefined detach();
 hoolean isPointInRange(Node node, unsigned long offset);
```

```
short comparePoint(Node node, unsigned long offset);
       <u>boolean</u> <u>intersectsNode</u> (<u>Node</u> <u>node</u>);
       stringifier;
     [Exposed=Window]
     interface NodeIterator {
       [SameObject] readonly attribute Node root;
       readonly attribute <a href="Node">Node</a> referenceNode;
       readonly attribute <a href="boolean">boolean</a> <a href="pointerBeforeReferenceNode">pointerBeforeReferenceNode</a>;
       readonly attribute <u>unsigned long</u> <u>whatToShow</u>;
       readonly attribute <a href="NodeFilter">NodeFilter</a>? <a href="filter">filter</a>;
       Node? nextNode();
       Node? previousNode();
       undefined detach();
     [Exposed=Window]
     interface <u>TreeWalker</u> {
       [SameObject] readonly attribute Node root;
       readonly attribute unsigned long whatToShow;
       readonly attribute <a href="NodeFilter">NodeFilter</a>? <a href="filter">filter</a>;
                  attribute Node currentNode;
       Node? parentNode();
       Node? firstChild();
       Node? lastChild();
       Node? previousSibling();
       Node? nextSibling();
       Node? previousNode();
       Node? nextNode();
     [<u>Exposed</u>=Window]
     callback interface NodeFilter {
       // Constants for acceptNode()
       const unsigned short FILTER ACCEPT = 1;
       const unsigned short FILTER REJECT = 2;
       const unsigned short FILTER SKIP = 3;
       // Constants for whatToShow
       const unsigned long SHOW ALL = OxFFFFFFFF;
       const <u>unsigned long SHOW ELEMENT</u> = 0x1;
       const <u>unsigned long</u> <u>SHOW ATTRIBUTE</u> = 0x2;
       const <u>unsigned long SHOW TEXT</u> = 0x4;
       const \underline{unsigned\ long}\ \underline{SHOW\ CDATA\ SECTION}\ =\ 0x8;
       const <u>unsigned long SHOW ENTITY REFERENCE</u> = 0x10; // historical
File an issue about the selected text \underline{Y} = 0x20; // historical
```

```
const unsigned long SHOW PROCESSING INSTRUCTION = 0x40;
  const <u>unsigned long</u> <u>SHOW COMMENT</u> = 0x80;
  const unsigned long SHOW DOCUMENT = 0x100;
  const <u>unsigned long SHOW DOCUMENT TYPE</u> = 0x200;
  const unsigned long SHOW DOCUMENT FRAGMENT = 0x400;
 const <u>unsigned long SHOW NOTATION</u> = 0x800; // historical
 <u>unsigned short</u> <u>acceptNode</u> (<u>Node</u> <u>node</u>);
[Exposed=Window]
interface DOMTokenList {
  readonly attribute <u>unsigned long length</u>;
  getter DOMString? item(unsigned long index);
  <u>boolean</u> <u>contains</u> (<u>DOMString</u> <u>token</u>);
  [CEReactions] undefined add (DOMString... tokens);
  [CEReactions] undefined remove (DOMString... tokens);
  [CEReactions] boolean toggle (DOMString token, optional boolean force);
  [CEReactions] boolean replace (DOMString token, DOMString newToken);
  boolean supports(DOMString token);
  [CEReactions] stringifier attribute DOMString value;
  iterable < DOMString >;
};
[Exposed=Window]
interface \ \underline{\textit{XPathResult}} \ \{
  const unsigned short ANY TYPE = 0;
  const unsigned short NUMBER TYPE = 1;
  const unsigned short STRING TYPE = 2;
  const unsigned short BOOLEAN TYPE = 3;
  const unsigned short UNORDERED NODE ITERATOR TYPE = 4;
  const unsigned short ORDERED NODE ITERATOR TYPE = 5;
  const <u>unsigned short</u> <u>UNORDERED NODE SNAPSHOT TYPE</u> = 6;
  const unsigned short ORDERED NODE SNAPSHOT TYPE = 7;
  const <u>unsigned short</u> <u>ANY UNORDERED NODE TYPE</u> = 8;
  const unsigned short FIRST ORDERED NODE TYPE = 9;
  readonly attribute <u>unsigned short</u> <u>resultType</u>;
  readonly attribute unrestricted double numberValue;
  readonly attribute DOMString stringValue;
  readonly attribute boolean boolean Value;
  readonly attribute Node? singleNodeValue;
  readonly attribute <a href="boolean">boolean</a> <a href="invalidIteratorState">invalidIteratorState</a>;
  readonly attribute unsigned long snapshotLength;
  Node? iterateNext();
  Node? snapshotItem(unsigned long index);
```

```
interface XPathExpression {
  // XPathResult.ANY_TYPE = 0
  <u>XPathResult</u> evaluate (<u>Node</u> contextNode, optional <u>unsigned short</u> type = 0, optional <u>XPathResult</u>? result =
null);
};
callback interface <u>XPathNSResolver</u> {
  DOMString? lookupNamespaceURI (DOMString? prefix);
};
interface mixin XPathEvaluatorBase {
  [NewObject] XPathExpression createExpression (DOMString expression, optional XPathNSResolver? resolver =
null);
  <u>XPathNSResolver</u> <u>createNSResolver(Node nodeResolver)</u>;
  // XPathResult.ANY_TYPE = 0
  <u>XPathResult</u> <u>evaluate</u>(<u>DOMString</u> <u>expression</u>, <u>Node</u> <u>contextNode</u>, optional <u>XPathNSResolver</u>? <u>resolver</u> = null,
optional <u>unsigned short type</u> = 0, optional <u>XPathResult</u>? <u>result</u> = null);
};
Document includes XPathEvaluatorBase;
[<u>Exposed</u>=Window]
interface XPathEvaluator {
  constructor();
};
XPathEvaluator includes XPathEvaluatorBase;
```